

INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY BLANCHARDSTOWN

MSc THESIS

---

# Predictions in Financial Time Series Data

---

*Author:*

Allan STEEL

*Supervisor:*

Dr. Geraldine GRAY

*A thesis submitted in fulfilment of the requirements  
for the degree of Master of Science*

*in the*

School of Informatics and Engineering

June 2014

29 June, 2014

# Declaration of Authorship

I, Allan STEEL, declare that this thesis titled, 'Predictions in Financial Time Series Data' and the work presented in it are my own. I confirm that:

- This work was done wholly or mainly while in candidature for a research degree at this University.
- Where any part of this thesis has previously been submitted for a degree or any other qualification at this University or any other institution, this has been clearly stated.
- Where I have consulted the published work of others, this is always clearly attributed.
- Where I have quoted from the work of others, the source is always given. With the exception of such quotations, this thesis is entirely my own work.
- I have acknowledged all main sources of help.
- Where the thesis is based on work done by myself jointly with others, I have made clear exactly what was done by others and what I have contributed myself.

Signed:

---

Date:

---

INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY BLANCHARDSTOWN

# *Abstract*

School of Informatics and Engineering

Master of Science

**Predictions in Financial Time Series Data**

by Allan STEEL

The Thesis Abstract is written here (and usually kept to just this page). The page is kept centered vertically so can expand into the blank space above the title too...

# *Acknowledgements*

The acknowledgements and the people to thank go here, don't forget to include your project advisor...

Thank people for writing the open-source software tools.

# Contents

<b>Declaration of Authorship</b>	<b>i</b>
<b>Abstract</b>	<b>ii</b>
<b>Acknowledgements</b>	<b>iii</b>
<b>Contents</b>	<b>iv</b>
<b>List of Figures</b>	<b>ix</b>
<b>List of Tables</b>	<b>x</b>
<b>1 Introduction</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 Background . . . . .	1
1.1.1 Fundamental Analysis . . . . .	1
1.1.2 Technical Analysis . . . . .	2
1.1.3 Time Series Forecasting . . . . .	2
1.2 Statement of the Problem . . . . .	3
1.3 Purpose of Study . . . . .	4
1.3.1 Study Objectives . . . . .	4
1.4 Research Questions or Hypothesis . . . . .	4
1.5 Methodology . . . . .	4
1.6 Limitations of the Study . . . . .	5
1.7 Scope of the Study . . . . .	5
1.8 Structure of Project . . . . .	5
<b>2 Literature Review</b>	<b>7</b>
2.1 Technical Analysis . . . . .	7
2.1.1 Trading Systems . . . . .	7
2.1.2 Technical Analysis Overview . . . . .	9
2.1.3 Does Technical Analysis Work? . . . . .	10
2.1.4 Moving Average Indicators . . . . .	12
2.1.5 Candlesticks Patterns . . . . .	12
2.1.6 Trend Reversal Oscillators . . . . .	14
2.2 Time Series . . . . .	15

2.2.1	Time Series Smoothing . . . . .	18
2.2.1.1	Simple Moving Average (SMA) . . . . .	18
2.2.1.2	Weighted Moving Average (WMA) . . . . .	19
2.2.1.3	Exponential Moving Average (EMA) . . . . .	19
2.2.1.4	Moving Averages in Practical Use . . . . .	20
2.2.1.5	Holt-Winters Smoothing Models . . . . .	20
2.2.2	Auto-Regression Family of Models . . . . .	22
2.2.2.1	Auto-Regression . . . . .	22
2.2.3	Auto-Regressive Moving Average (ARMA) . . . . .	23
2.2.4	Auto-Regressive Integrated Moving Average (ARIMA) . . . . .	24
2.2.5	ARIMA Parameter Selection . . . . .	26
2.2.6	Hybrid Models . . . . .	28
<b>3</b>	<b>Methodology</b>	<b>30</b>
3.1	Data Collection . . . . .	30
3.2	Data Quality . . . . .	30
3.3	Data Description . . . . .	30
3.3.1	Average True Range (ATR) . . . . .	33
3.3.2	Opening Price . . . . .	34
3.3.3	Closing Price . . . . .	35
3.3.4	High / Low Price . . . . .	35
3.3.5	OH/OL Price Fluctuations . . . . .	36
3.4	Software Tools . . . . .	39
3.4.1	R and R Studio . . . . .	39
3.4.2	Sweave . . . . .	39
3.4.3	Rapid Miner . . . . .	39
3.4.4	Microsoft Excel and VBA . . . . .	39
<b>4</b>	<b>Technical Analysis</b>	<b>40</b>
4.1	Introduction . . . . .	40
4.2	Baseline Systems - Naive Methods . . . . .	41
4.2.1	Naive Long System . . . . .	42
4.2.2	Naive Reversing System . . . . .	43
4.2.3	Summary of Naive Baseline Systems . . . . .	44
4.3	Trend Detection Indicators . . . . .	44
4.3.1	Simple Moving Average (SMA) System . . . . .	44
4.3.2	Moving Average Convergence/Divergence (MACD) . . . . .	47
4.3.3	Aroon Indicator . . . . .	48
4.4	Market Reversal Indicators . . . . .	49
4.4.1	Parabolic Stop-and-Reverse (SAR) . . . . .	50
4.4.2	MACD as reversal Indicator . . . . .	50
4.5	Momentum Indicators . . . . .	51
4.5.1	Stochastic Oscillator . . . . .	51
4.5.2	Rate of Change (ROC) . . . . .	52
4.6	Break-out systems . . . . .	53
4.6.1	Daily High / Low Breakout System . . . . .	53
4.6.2	Break Out of 90% Quantile Level . . . . .	54

4.7	Candlestick Patterns . . . . .	54
4.7.1	Hanging Man, Hammer, Inverted Hanging Man and Shooting Star . . . . .	54
4.7.2	Engulfing Candlestick . . . . .	58
4.7.3	Doji . . . . .	58
<b>5</b>	<b>Time Series</b>	<b>60</b>
5.1	ARIMA Models . . . . .	60
5.2	Manual Generation ARIMA of Models . . . . .	61
5.2.1	Data Exploration . . . . .	61
5.2.2	Adjusting for non-uniform variance and non-stationariness . . . . .	61
5.2.3	Examine ACF / PACF . . . . .	62
5.2.4	Try the chosen model(s) . . . . .	64
5.2.5	Model Residuals . . . . .	65
5.2.6	Calculate forecast . . . . .	67
5.3	Automatic Generation of ARIMA Models . . . . .	67
5.4	Trading the ARIMA Models . . . . .	68
5.4.1	System 1 - Close Price vs Forecast . . . . .	68
5.4.2	System 2 - Forecast vs Previous Forecast . . . . .	69
5.5	Hybrid ARIMA Models . . . . .	69
5.6	Predicting Closing Price . . . . .	71
5.6.1	ARIMA/Artificial Neural Networks (ANN) . . . . .	71
5.6.2	ARIMA/k-Nearest Neighbour (k-NN) . . . . .	72
5.7	Predicting Up or Down - Categorical Label . . . . .	73
5.7.1	ARIMA/Artificial Neural Networks (ANN) . . . . .	73
5.7.2	ARIMA/k-Nearest Neighbour (k-NN) . . . . .	73
5.7.3	ARIMA/Support Vector Machine (SVN) . . . . .	74
5.8	Predicting Up or Down - Continuous Label . . . . .	74
5.8.1	ARIMA/Artificial Neural Networks (ANN) . . . . .	75
5.8.2	ARIMA/k-Nearest Neighbour (k-NN) . . . . .	75
<b>6</b>	<b>Analysis</b>	<b>76</b>
6.1	Introduction . . . . .	76
6.2	Baseline Systems . . . . .	76
6.2.1	Naive Systems . . . . .	77
6.3	Technical Analysis . . . . .	78
6.3.1	Trend Detection . . . . .	78
6.3.2	Market Reversal Indicators . . . . .	80
6.3.3	Momentum Indicators . . . . .	81
6.3.4	Breakout systems . . . . .	82
6.3.5	Candlestick Patterns . . . . .	83
6.4	Time Series Analysis . . . . .	84
6.4.1	ARIMA Models . . . . .	84
6.4.2	ARIMA Hybrids - Predicting Closing Price . . . . .	85
6.4.2.1	ARIMA/Artificial Neural Networks (ANN) . . . . .	85
6.4.2.2	ARIMA/k-Nearest Neighbour (k-NN) . . . . .	86
6.4.3	ARIMA Hybrids - Predicting Up Down with Categorical Label . . . . .	86
6.4.3.1	ARIMA/Artificial Neural Networks (ANN) . . . . .	87

6.4.3.2	ARIMA/k-Nearest Neighbour (k-NN)	87
6.4.4	ARIMA Hybrids - Predicting Up Down with Numeric Label	87
6.4.4.1	ARIMA/Artificial Neural Networks (ANN)	88
6.4.4.2	ARIMA/k-Nearest Neighbour (k-NN)	88
6.5	Conclusion	88
6.6	Future Work	89
<b>7</b>	<b>To Do - Not for Thesis</b>	<b>90</b>
7.1	Chp2	90
7.2	Chp3	90
7.3	Chp4	91
7.4	Chp5	91
7.5	App A	91
<b>A</b>	<b>R Code</b>	<b>92</b>
A.1	Chapter 4	92
A.1.1	Chapter 4 Results Generation	92
A.1.2	Naive Systems	106
A.1.2.1	Naive Long System	106
A.1.2.2	Naive Long System trading close to close	107
A.1.2.3	Naive Reversing System	108
A.1.3	Trend Detection Systems	109
A.1.3.1	SMA	109
A.1.3.2	MACD - trend indicator	110
A.1.3.3	Aroon trend indicator	110
A.1.4	Market Reversal Indicator	111
A.1.4.1	SAR reversal indicator	111
A.1.4.2	MACD as Reversal Indicator	112
A.1.4.3	Stochastic reversal indicator	113
A.1.4.4	Rate of Change(ROC)	114
A.1.5	Break Out Systems	115
A.1.5.1	Break Out	115
A.1.5.2	90% Quantile	116
A.1.6	Candlestick Systems	117
A.1.6.1	Hammer and Inverted Hammer Candlestick Pattern	117
A.1.6.2	Hammer and Inverted Hammer Candlestick Pattern in a Trending Market	118
A.1.6.3	Engulfing Candlestick Pattern	119
A.1.6.4	Engulfing Candlestick Pattern in a Trending Market	120
A.1.6.5	Doji Candlestick Pattern in a Trending Market	121
A.2	Chapter 5	122
A.2.1	System 1	137
A.2.2	System 2	138
A.2.3	Categorical Label	139
A.2.4	Continuous Label - ARIMA/ANN	140
A.2.5	Continuous Label	141



A.3	Utility Code . . . . .	142
<b>B</b>	<b>Technical Indicators</b>	<b>147</b>
B.1	Moving Average Convergence Divergence (MACD) . . . . .	147
B.2	Aroon Indicator . . . . .	147
B.3	Parabolic Stop-and-Reverse (SAR) . . . . .	148
B.4	Stochastic . . . . .	149
B.5	Rate of Change(ROC) . . . . .	150
	 <b>Bibliography</b>	 <b>151</b>

# List of Figures

2.1	Candlestick representation of daily open and close prices . . . . .	13
2.2	Examples of well known candlestick patterns . . . . .	13
2.3	Candlesticks and market movement . . . . .	14
2.4	A time series decomposed into primary components . . . . .	16
2.5	A stationary time series . . . . .	17
2.6	An additive time series . . . . .	17
2.7	A multiplicative time series . . . . .	18
2.8	Exponential smoothing of a time series with no seasonality or trend . . .	21
2.9	Exponential smoothing of a time series with trend though no seasonality .	22
2.10	Exponential smoothing of a time series with trend and seasonality . . . .	22
2.11	Correlogram of auto-correlations . . . . .	27
3.1	Open, high, low and closing prices (OHLC). . . . .	31
3.2	Graph of Dax between 2000 and 2013 . . . . .	32
3.3	Graph of Dax in 2013 . . . . .	32
3.4	ATR of Dax Divided by Closing Price . . . . .	34
4.1	Situation in which using a stop loss is beneficial . . . . .	46
4.2	Situation in which using a stop loss is detrimental . . . . .	46
4.3	Hammer and Inverted Hammer candlestick patterns . . . . .	55
4.4	Hanging Man and Shooting Star candlestick patterns . . . . .	55
4.5	Dax candlestick patterns occurring in April 2014. . . . .	56
4.6	Engulfing candlestick patterns . . . . .	58
4.7	Doji candlestick patterns . . . . .	59
5.1	FTSE 100 index between the years 2000 to 2013 . . . . .	62
5.2	First difference of FTSE between the years 2000 to 2013 . . . . .	62
5.3	ACF of FTSE 100 between between the years 2000 to 2013 . . . . .	63
5.4	PACF of FTSE 100 between between the years 2000 to 2013 . . . . .	64
5.5	FTSE 100 ARIMA model residuals. . . . .	66
5.6	ACF plot of the FTSE 100 ARIMA model residuals . . . . .	66
5.7	Histogram of the FTSE 100 ARIMA model residuals . . . . .	67
5.8	Rapid Miner hybrid ARIMA process . . . . .	70
5.9	Rapid Miner cross-validation operator . . . . .	71

# List of Tables

2.1	Example of a Simple Moving Average . . . . .	19
2.2	Example of a Weighted Moving Average . . . . .	20
2.3	Times series and matching models . . . . .	26
3.1	First 6 rows of the Dax data set. . . . .	31
3.2	Final 6 rows of the Dax data set. . . . .	31
3.3	Dax summary statistics . . . . .	31
3.4	Average True Range of Dax . . . . .	34
3.5	Opening Prices in relation to previous day's High and Low values . . . . .	34
3.6	Closing Prices in relation to previous day's High and Low values . . . . .	35
3.7	Daily Open to Close Price Range . . . . .	35
3.8	Quantiles of the open to close price range . . . . .	36
3.9	Today's H/L Prices in relation to previous day's HL . . . . .	36
3.10	Minor daily price fluctuation . . . . .	37
3.11	Quantiles of Minor daily price fluctuation. . . . .	37
3.12	Major daily price fluctuation. . . . .	38
3.13	Quantiles of Major daily price fluctuation. . . . .	38
3.14	Quantiles of the open to close price range. . . . .	38
4.1	Results from the Naive Long System . . . . .	43
4.2	Indice Prices in 2000 and 2013. . . . .	43
4.3	Results from the Naive Long System trading close to close . . . . .	43
4.4	Results from the Naive Reversing System. . . . .	44
4.5	Results from a system based on SMA . . . . .	45
4.6	Results from a system based on SMA with stop loss . . . . .	47
4.7	Results from a system using MACD as a trend indicator . . . . .	48
4.8	Results from a system based on the Aroon indicator . . . . .	49
4.9	Results from a system based on the Aroon indicator with stop loss . . . . .	49
4.10	Impact of using stop loss with Aroon trend indicator . . . . .	49
4.11	Results from a system based on the SAR indicator . . . . .	50
4.12	Results from a system based on MACD as trend reversal indicator . . . . .	51
4.13	Results from a system based on the Stochastic indicator . . . . .	52
4.14	Results from a system based on the Stochastic indicator with a stop loss . . . . .	52
4.15	Results from a system based on the ROC indicator . . . . .	53
4.16	Results from the Daily High / Low Breakout System . . . . .	53
4.17	Results from a break out system using the day's the minor move . . . . .	54
4.18	Results from a system based on the Hammer and Inverted Hammer candlestick patterns . . . . .	57

4.19	Results from a system based on the Hammer and Inverted Hammer candlestick patterns occurring in a downtrend . . . . .	57
4.20	Results from a system based on the Engulfing candlestick pattern . . . . .	58
4.21	Results from a system based on the Engulfing candlestick pattern in a trending market . . . . .	59
4.22	Results from a system based on the Doji candlestick pattern in a trending market . . . . .	59
5.1	AIC, AICc and BIC results from alternative ARIMA models . . . . .	65
5.2	Box Ljung test of FTSE 100 ARIMA model residuals . . . . .	66
5.3	Forecast for FTSE 100 generated from the ARIMA model . . . . .	67
5.4	Arima models chosen for the indice data sets . . . . .	68
5.5	Forecasts generated by the ARIMA models used in the System 1 algorithm	69
5.6	Forecasts generated by the ARIMA models used in the System 1 algorithm	69
5.7	Results from passing closing price predictions from hybrid ARIMA/ANN model to System 1 . . . . .	71
5.8	Results from passing closing price predictions from hybrid ARIMA/ANN model to System 2 . . . . .	72
5.9	Results from passing closing price predictions from hybrid ARIMA/k-NN model to System 1 . . . . .	72
5.10	Results from passing closing price predictions from hybrid ARIMA/k-NN model to System 2 . . . . .	72
5.11	Results from a trading system using the forecast of categorical label "U/D" from hybrid ARIMA/ANN model . . . . .	73
5.12	Results from a trading system using the forecast of categorical label "U/D" from hybrid ARIMA/k-NN model . . . . .	74
5.13	Results from a trading system with a stop loss using the forecast of categorical label "U/D" from hybrid ARIMA/k-NN model . . . . .	74
5.14	Results from a trading system using the forecast of categorical label "U/D" from hybrid ARIMA/SVM model . . . . .	74
5.15	Results from a trading system using the forecast of a continous label from a hybrid ARIMA/ANN model . . . . .	75
5.16	Results from a trading system using the forecast of a continous label from a hybrid ARIMA/ANN model . . . . .	75
6.1	Returns from a "Buy and Hold" technique . . . . .	77
6.2	Results from the Naive Reversing System. . . . .	78
6.3	Aroon results minus baseline . . . . .	80
6.4	Daily High / Low Breakout System compared with Naive Reversing System	82
6.5	Daily 90% Quantile level Breakout System compared with Naive Reversing System . . . . .	83
6.6	Arima models chosen for the indice data sets . . . . .	84
6.7	Mean PL from ARIMA models minus mean PL from Naive Reverse system	85
6.8	Arima/ANN predictions passed to System 1 compared to Naive Reversing methodology . . . . .	86
6.9	Mean PL from hybrid ARIMA/k-NN models minus mean PL from Naive Reverse system . . . . .	86
6.10	Predicting UpDn CAT - Arima/k-NN predictions passed to System 4 - .	87

---

6.11 Predicting UpDn 01 - Arima/k-NN predictions passed to System 3. . . . .	88
--	----

*To anyone who has never had anything dedicated to them . . .*

# Chapter 1

## Introduction

?Chapter1?

### 1.1 Background

For hundreds of years speculators have tried to make a monetary profit in financial markets by predicting the future price of commodities, stocks, foreign exchange rates and more recently futures and options. Over the last few decades these efforts have increased markedly, using a variety of techniques ([Hsu, 2011](#)), which can be broadly classified into three categories:

- fundamental analysis
- technical analysis
- traditional time series forecasting

#### 1.1.1 Fundamental Analysis

Fundamental analysis makes use of basic market information in order to predict future movements of an asset. If an investor was looking at a particular stock's fundamental data they would consider information such as revenue, profit forecasts, supply, demand and operating margins etc. Speculators looking at commodities might consider weather patterns, political aspects, government legislation and so on. Effectively fundamental analysis is concerned with macro economic and political factors that might affect the future price of a financial asset. Fundamental analysis is not considered further in this study.

### 1.1.2 Technical Analysis

⟨chp1:ta⟩

Technical analysis is the study of historical prices and patterns with the aim of predicting future prices. Practitioners of technical analysis in the past were referred to as chartists, as they believed all that was needed to know about a particular market was contained in its pricing chart. [Murphy \(1999\)](#) defines technical analysis as:

*“Technical analysis is the study of market action, primarily through the use of charts for the purpose of forecasting future price trends.”*

Technical analysis (TA) is interesting as it tends to polarise opinion as to its scientific basis and effectiveness. To many people and particularly scholars in academia it is considered little more than Black Magic. Consider the words of [Malkiel \(1999\)](#):

*“Obviously I am biased against the chartist. This is not only a personal predilection, but a professional one as well. Technical Analysis is anathema to the academic world. We love to pick on it. Our bullying tactics are prompted by two considerations: (1) the method is patently false; and (2) it’s easy to pick on. And while it may seem a bit unfair to pick on such a sorry target, just remember: it is your money we are trying to save.”*

However, in world of finance technical analysis is ubiquitous and widely used ([Menkhoff, 2010](#)). In support of TA a plethora of so-called indicators have been developed over the years from simple moving averages to much more exotic offerings. Today every piece of software or on-line analysis tool provides the ability to place a multitude of technical indicators on a graph of stock, commodity or any financial instrument.

Most technical indicators essentially fall into one of two main categories, ones attempting to detect the start and direction of trends and those trying to identify market reversals generally called oscillators. Trend analysis indicators include Average Direction Index (ADX), Aroon, Moving Averages and Commodity Channel Indexes (CCI). Price oscillator indicators include, Moving Average Convergence Divergence (MACD - ([Appel and Dobson, 2007](#))), Stochastics, Relative Strength Index (RSI) and the Chande Momentum Oscillator (CMO).

### 1.1.3 Time Series Forecasting

The study of forecasting time series data has been an active area of study for several decades ([De Gooijer and Hyndman, 2006](#)). Series data is ordered such that the ordering is an important if not critical aspect of the data, with the requirement to maintain this ordering enforcing certain requirements on any processing. Series data can be ordered by



factors such as distance or height but typically time is the ordering encountered. Financial data is an important category of series data and a variety of well known time series forecasting methods have been applied to the problem of predicting price movements in the financial markets. These have included, exponential smoothing, auto-regressive moving average (ARMA) and auto-regressive integrated moving average (ARIMA).

A variety of smoothing algorithms have been applied to series data in general and financial data in particular. Moving averages, including simple, weighted and exponential, are widely employed by participants in financial markets to both predict future movements and quantify current conditions. Classical time series analysis such as so-called Holt-Winters exponential smoothing, the auto-regressive moving average (ARMA or Box-Jenkins model) and auto-regressive integrated moving average (ARIMA) methods have been widely employed. In more recent years data mining techniques have been applied to the problem of financial time series prediction, for example with the use of artificial neural networks (ANNs) and support vector machines (SVM) as well as an hybrid approach of combining the classic time series techniques with the data mining methods in an attempt to leverage the strengths of each technique.

## 1.2 Statement of the Problem

The problem under study in this thesis is that of predicting the movement of financial markets. Financial markets include:

- Indices e.g. Dow Jones Index, FTSE100 etc.
- Commodities e.g. gold, oil etc.
- Foreign exchange rates (also known as Forex or FX) e.g. GBP USD (price of British pounds divided by US dollars).
- Stocks e.g. Google, Apple, Barclays Bank etc.

The goal of financial traders is to detect the movement of the markets and buy instruments expected to rise in price “going long” and sell those predicted to fall in price “going short”. The markets are a neutral sum process, for every participant who gains there are those who lose.

## 1.3 Purpose of Study

The purpose of this study is to investigate and establish the usefulness and accuracy of a selection of technical indicators and time series analysis on the ability to predict future data movements in a group of financial markets including national indices, Forex, commodities and stocks.

### 1.3.1 Study Objectives

The objective of this study is three fold:

1. Determine if a group of popular and widely used technical indicators can be used to predict the direction of movement in a range of financial markets.
2. Investigate if traditional time series models can predict the direction of movement in a range of financial markets.
3. Use traditional time series models to identify when a financial market moves into the “trending” phase.

## 1.4 Research Questions or Hypothesis

The hypothesis of the study is that the use of technical indicators or time series analysis can help to predict the future direction and movement of financial markets.

## 1.5 Methodology

1. Review current research in the field.
2. Collect data, primarily from freely available sources on the internet such as Yahoo and Google.
3. Pre-process the data and perform initial data investigations and analysis.
4. Establish “base line” systems based on initial analysis.
5. Apply Technical Indicators to these “base line” systems to determine if they have a role to play in predicting the movement of a particular financial market.
6. Apply traditional times series modelling methods to evaluate their suitability in predicting future price movements of financial market.

## 1.6 Limitations of the Study

Limitations in this study include:

1. Choice of Technical Indicators - a small selection of the huge number available was selected. The selected group represent widely used examples and are drawn from the various categories available.
2. Availability of financial data - Daily data in the format of open, high, low and close prices (OHLC) is readily and freely available and is thus used in this study. Data in time frames other than daily are generally only commercially available and beyond the resources of this study.
3. Forex data - Frequently Forex is provided as a single daily value as these markets are traded all 24 hours of the day. This may have impacts on the suitability of this data for various algorithms used in this study.

## 1.7 Scope of the Study

There are a huge choice of financial data sets from which to choose and likewise many dozens of technical indicators. This study will employ daily data from major national indices such as the German Dax, US Dow and Japanese Nikkei. Commodity data will cover gold and US Crude Oil and forex will include GBP/USD, EUR/USD, EUR/GBP, USD/JPN exchange pairs. Technical Indicators used will include examples from each of the primary categories trend detection and market reversal oscillators.

## 1.8 Structure of Project

Chapter 2 is a literature review and introduction to time series analysis and financial market trading with systems and technical indicators. The classical time series methods of Holt-Winters exponential smoothing, auto-regressive moving average (ARMA or Box-Jenkins model) and auto-regressive integrated moving average (ARIMA) are introduced and explained. Their adoption and use in predicting financial markets is discussed.

Chapter 3 introduces the methodology used in this study. It includes a description of the data sets employed, software and programming languages levered and the general methodology and approach taken.

Chapter 4 details the implementation and experimentation.

Chapter 5 is an analysis of the results generated and conclusions.

Appendix A

## Chapter 2

# Literature Review

⟨Chapter2⟩

Speculators, stock market traders, simply traders or market participants are all terms used to describe individuals and organisations who attempt to make a living from buying and selling various financial assets in a huge range of markets around the world. Clearly the ability to forecast the direction of market movements, up or down, is vital to these individuals and entities. To this end a wide variety of techniques and methods have been tried and used by the participants in the market. Further, over the last few decades academics have shown an interest in this field and attempted to quantify and justify the wide variety of techniques used.

Two areas where traders and academics have looked for help in predicting future market direction is time series forecasting, and the use of technical indicators. This chapter is divided into two these general categories, time series modelling and the use of technical indicators.

## 2.1 Technical Analysis

### 2.1.1 Trading Systems

⟨sec:tradingsystems⟩

A wide variety of techniques have been employed by financial market traders in their attempts to make profits with the term “trading system” being applied generally to the methodology used. Often trading systems are “mechanical” in nature in that traders use a distinct set of rules in order to guide them as when to enter a trade, when to exit and so on. [Faith \(2007\)](#), one of the original and now famous “Turtle Traders” provides an excellent overview of mechanical trading systems (and how they were to become known as the “Turtles”). Richard Dennis and William Eckhardt the sponsors and mentors of the Turtles were trying to settle a debate on whether individuals simply have a natural

talent which enables them to become successful traders or if they could be taught using a mechanical trading system. Dennis who believed they could be developed, coined a phrase along the lines of “growing traders like turtles” as they had just visited a turtle farm in Singapore.

Weissman (2005) makes the point that there are several aspects to a trading system. Firstly there are entry and exit signals, these are market events that trigger a speculator to enter into the market and either buy or sell a particular asset. These signals are typically events such as a fast moving average crossing a slower one, the market hitting a certain price or the occurrence of a particular chart pattern (see section 2.1.5). Other elements of a trading system include position sizing rules and money management strategies such that returns are significant, losses are minimised and the entire risk profile is controlled.

Many traders erroneously mistake entry and exit signals as being a full trading system in themselves whereas in actuality they are merely components of a system (Beau and Lucas, 1999). Likewise most, if not all, papers published by academia focus on entry and exit signals alone, which is probably a result of several factors. Firstly, entry and exit signals are important components in trading systems and are a good place to start in system development. Additionally the other aspects of a system are not as well known and their importance is often ignored (Kaufman, 2013). Finally, testing an “entire” system as defined here is far more difficult and time consuming than considering entry and exit signals alone and often it is not practical to extend a study to include a full system. In summary there is value in considering entry and exit signal in isolation but one has to remember it is not the whole story.

Attempting to forecast stock market prices is a complex and challenging endeavour, yet one that is widely encountered. There is a large body of research published in this area which has been reviewed by Atsalakis and Valavanis (2009). Work usually focuses on either individual stocks or more commonly stock indices. Stock indices are the sum movements of many individual equities and therefore reflect the movement of the market as a whole as opposed to any one stock. Many stock market indices have been investigated including those belonging to well-developed countries such as those in Western Europe, North America etc. as well as developing markets such as those in eastern Europe.

In trying to predict stock market movements a variety of input variables have been used. Frequently, the so-called OHLC (open, high, low and closing prices) are used as inputs along with a variety of technical indicators (Fiess and MacDonald, 2002). In addition many authors have used a combination of markets, for example Huang et al. (2005) use both the USD/YEN exchange rate and the S&P 500 to build a prediction model for the

Japanese NIKKEI index. A variety of predictive methodologies have been reported in the literature including linear and multi-linear regression, ARMA and ARIMA models, genetic algorithms (GAs), artificial neural networks (ANNs), random walk (RW) and the so-called buy and hold (B & H) strategy.

A variety of performance measures have been reported including both non-statistical and statistical methods. Non-statistical performance measures used include annual return and annual profit of a particular model as well as the hit rate or the number of times a model correctly predicts whether a market will go up or down. Alternatively a variety of statistical measures have also been employed and prominent amongst them are, mean absolute error (MAE), root mean squared (RMSE), mean squared prediction error (MSPE), correlation coefficient and autocorrelation squared correlation and Akaike's minimum final prediction error (FPE).

Two well studied and used methodologies in stock trading are the moving average system and range breakout system reported by (Brock et al., 1992) in one of the very earliest papers published covering technical analysis. In a moving average system (see section 4.3.1) the speculator buys a market when its price is above the moving average and sells in the reverse situation. A large number of variations on this theme can be found, with the use of two moving averages being popular. When using two averages there is normally a "fast" one, usually of the order of 10 to 25 days, and a "slow" one in the 50 to 250 day range. In these circumstances a buy is usually triggered when the fast average crosses above the slower average. The theory is that the moving averages follow the trends in the market and thus allow the market participant to trade in the direction of the trend, which is an advantageous situation for the trader.

A second popular idea is that of breaking out of a range. Often financial markets trade between a range of values in a particular time period, essentially markets are either trending (up or down) or not trending at all but moving within a defined range. While moving in a range the lower price boundary is referred to as support and the upper one as resistance. In a breakout system the analyst buys a market when it moves beyond these resistance levels or sells when it breaks below the support. Brock et al. (1992) analysed both these two ideas and found merit in them. Using daily data from the Dow Jones industrial index they found that these strategies provided better results than those generated with random walk, AR and GARCH models.

### 2.1.2 Technical Analysis Overview

Technical analysis is the technique of looking at the past history of a financial market, identifying patterns and trends and utilising the information in predicting future price

movements ([Bulkowski, 2011](#)). A technical indicator is a method used to identify a particular pattern, and there have been a large number developed over the years to predict situations such as the start of a trend or a reversal in price movement. A wide range of papers on technical analysis (TA) indicators and methods can be found in the literature. Likewise technical analysis is prominent in many best selling books including *Market Wizards* ([Schwager, 1988](#)), *New Market Wizards* ([Schwager, 1994](#)) and *Covel's Trend Following* ([Covel, 2009](#)). In the following sections various technical indicators are introduced and their use in predicting market movements are explored. Firstly, the question of whether technical analysis even works is addressed, as this has received attention in the literature ([Marshall and Cahan, 2005](#), [Reitz, 2006](#), [Schulmeister, 2009](#), [Marshall et al., 2008](#)). Although technical analysis is widely used in the market place there is a question mark over the entire concept behind it and many people, especially academics, are highly sceptical about the validity of the entire approach.

### 2.1.3 Does Technical Analysis Work?

[Friesen et al. \(2009\)](#) have examined various price "patterns" used by traders in their systems such as "head-and-shoulders" and "double-top" patterns. The authors note that although a wide array of patterns have been identified and documented there lacks any convincing explanations for the formation of these patterns and how they can lead to profitable trading systems. The authors report that several studies based on the US equity market have identified distinct behaviours, namely the tendency for short-term momentum over 1 year to 6 months ([De Bondt and Thaler, 1985](#), [Chopra et al., 1992](#), [Jegadeesh and Titman, 1993](#)), longer term mean reversion and finally price reversals over the one to four week period ([Jegadeesh, 1990](#), [Lehmann, 1990](#), [Jegadeesh and Titman, 1995](#), [Gutierrez Jr and Kelley, 2008](#)). These observations lend support to the success of trading systems that purport to detect and follow trends in the market ([Sweeney, 1986](#), [Levich and Thomas, 1993](#), [Neely et al., 1997](#), [Dueker and Neely, 2007](#)).

The authors present a model that can explain the profitability of selected trading rules that utilise past chart patterns. One important aspect of this model is the inclusion of confirmation bias, which shows up in a wide range of decision making processes. Their model displays negative autocorrelations over the very short term, positive ones in the mid term and become negative again over the longer horizon, reflecting the documented empirical properties of US stock prices. It is suggested that traders take market positions affected by their original biased view which leads to autocorrelations and price movement patterns resulting in the previously described market behaviour.



[Shynkevich \(2012\)](#) investigated the power of a large selection of technical trading rules to yield profits when applied a selection of small cap and technology portfolios (US stocks) between 1995 and 2010. The author chose technical indicators from four general categories:

1. standard filter rules - for example a buy is generated when prices increase from a previous low. Such a low may be defined as the lowest closing price in a particular period. In more recent years this technique has been replaced by moving averages.
2. moving averages - signals generated when short MA cross long MA.
3. support and resistance trading strategy (SR) - a buy is initiated when prices rise above a local maximum, and vice versa for a local minimum price.
4. Channel breakout - related to SR, a buy/sell is triggered when a price moves outside a channel generated from highs and lows of a certain period.

The author applied a variety of parameters in each model resulting in a total of 12937 models being tested. It was reported that TA produced positive results in the first half of the time period tested, but not in the latter half. In the second half of the time period studied TA provided inferior performance than a buy-and-hold approach, i.e. a trader simply buys a particular asset and waits. The author concludes these differences in performance are due to equity markets having become more efficient in recent years which has reduced the short term predictive powers of TA.

The use of technical analysis in the finance community was studied by [Menkhoff \(2010\)](#) who looked into its use by professional fund managers. This study is noteworthy as it used data from experienced and educated market professionals and not a wider cross-section of traders. With the advent of the internet and the explosive growth in on-line financial charting and trading sites, financial trading became accessible to the general public, resulting in huge numbers of amateur traders entering the market. All of the web sites that cater for this segment of traders offer a huge number of technical analysis indicators built into their respective charting packages and even a rudimentary visit to any of the discussion forums will demonstrate the popularity and wide spread use of technical analysis.

The author surveyed 692 fund managers in several countries, with funds of various sizes under management. The vast majority of these fund managers reported using technical analysis to some degree and particular faith was put in TA for predicting price movements in the short term of up to a few weeks, beyond which focus shifts to fundamental analysis. Further, the workers found that smaller asset manager firms make

greater use of TA, possibly because deriving the information for fundamental analysis is beyond their resources. Finally, most respondents to the survey believe that human psychology is the reason TA works. In particular they suggest psychological biases in the market participants are the root cause of market trends and that TA is able to identify and follow them.

#### 2.1.4 Moving Average Indicators

A study of moving average convergence divergence (MACD) is reported by [Ulku and Prodan \(2013\)](#). MACD is a technique which attempts to detect the early stage of a trend as it forms, and is widely used by market participants. It is described in more detail in Appendix B section B.1. [Ulku and Prodan \(2013\)](#) apply MACD to a wide range of national stock market indices comprising developed as well as emerging markets. The authors compare the MACD signals against entry signals generated from simple break out systems (described previously). The comparison systems would generate a buy signal if the price moved higher than a moving average (MA), set at either 22, 56 and 200 days. The MACD and the comparison system using 22 day moving averages are classified as short horizon signals, while the break out of the 56 and 200 day MA are considered long horizon signals. The workers reported that the MACD indicators provide for profitable returns on 23 of 30 national indices, but that the 22 day MA performs better being positive in 27 of the 30 markets.

#### 2.1.5 Candlesticks Patterns

`<sec:candlesticks>`

Probably the oldest form of technical analysis in use today is the so-called candlestick analysis, so named because daily open and close prices are plotted such that they resemble candlesticks ([Morris, 2006](#)). Figure 2.1 is an example of daily prices being plotted as a candlestick, this plotting method is today ubiquitous in trading software. Typically the colour in which the candlestick is plotted indicates whether the price went up or down over the course of the day. Many charts that are plotted in colour use green to represent days that close up and red for days that close down. The main body of the candlestick represents the movement from open to close, and the protruding lines mark the high and low of the day.

Technical analysis via candlesticks is reputed to have been developed by Munelusa Homma, a legendary trader of rice in Osaka, Japan who made a fortune analysing rice prices with candlesticks in the seventeenth century ([Nison, 2001](#)). Candlestick patterns with supposed predictive qualities can be derived from a single day or from considering a few days, usually 2 or 3, together ([Bigalow, 2011](#)). There are a huge number of patterns

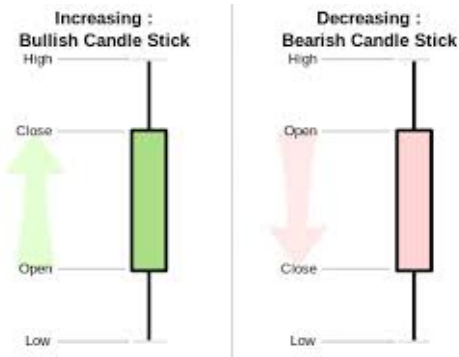


FIGURE 2.1: Candlestick representation of daily open and close prices. Different colouring is used to distinguish between prices going up or down.

<fig:Candlestick>

recorded in the literature and usually assigned exotic names such as “White Marubozu”, ”Black Shooting Star” and ”Hanging Man”. Examples of such named patterns can be seen in Figure 2.2.

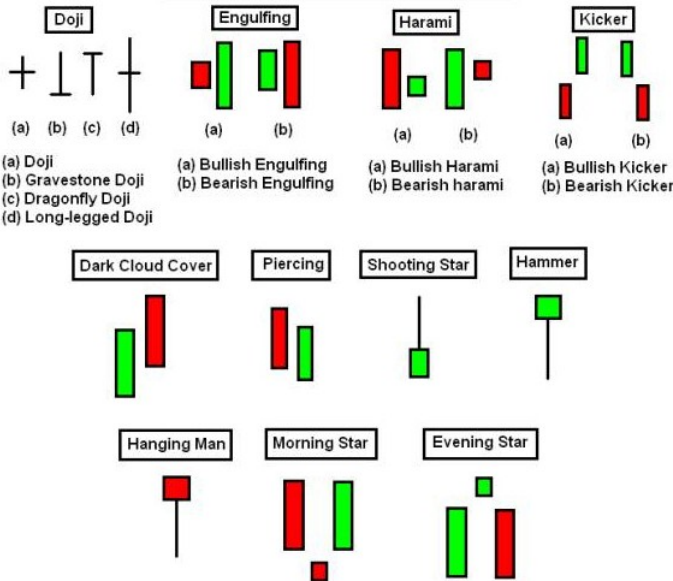


FIGURE 2.2: Examples of well known patterns encountered in candlestick analysis.

g:Candlestick\_Patterns>

Candlestick patterns are essentially visualisation tools providing an easy to comprehend view of the market movements in a particular day. However there is some vital information which is not conveyed in a candlestick. In particular the order of events isn’t displayed. Figure 2.3 shows how two days can produce the same candlestick but in actuality the price movements and volatility in them was very different. Depending upon the type of trading system being employed this could have important effects.

As always with technical analysis there is doubt as to the validity of the methods despite its almost universal employment. An in-depth study of the predictive power of a range of candlestick patterns on stock prices between 1992 and 2002 from the Dow Jones Industrial Average (DJIA) was carried out by (Marshall et al., 2006) in which doubt

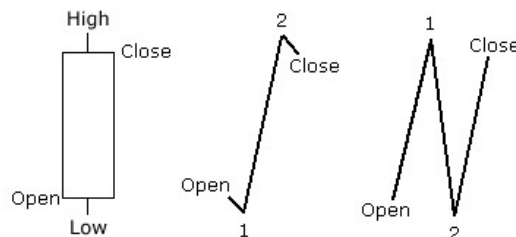


FIGURE 2.3: Candlesticks don't provide information regarding the order of price movements. Both these daily price movements would be represented with the same candlestick pattern.

(fig:chp2\_candle\_order)

was cast on the validity of candlestick patterns to predict market movements. The workers used a range of bullish (signals that indicate a trader should buy) and bearish (signals that indicate a trader should sell) candlestick patterns to initiate trades on the various stocks. Trades were held for ten days as it was assumed that these patterns reflect short terms trends and thus have a predictive power in a similar time frame. In order to quantify the results generated from the use candlestick patterns they were compared to results observed from four alternative null models. Simulated stock data was generated using a bootstrapping methodology (Efron, 1979) and then four null models were applied to the data, random walk, an autoregressive process of order one (AR(1)), a GARCH in-Mean (GARCH-M) model and an Exponential GARCH (EGARCH) model.

From the comparison of the results generated from the candlestick patterns and the four null models the workers concluded that the variety of candlestick patterns tested had no predictive power on the stocks at all. The returns from making buying and selling decisions based on candlestick patterns didn't outperform the null models on the simulated data. As always one has to be slightly careful with results of this nature as the trading period was fixed at ten days, in other words the candlestick patterns were used as an entry signal for the trade but there wasn't an exit signal. Further in reality use of candlesticks analysis would be incorporated into a trading system, which typically consists entry and exit signal, position sizing rules and money management strategies (Faith, 2007).

### 2.1.6 Trend Reversal Oscillators

Tanaka-Yamawaki and Tokuoka (2007) reported the use of several technical analysis techniques in the successful prediction of price movements in eight stocks found on the New York Stock Exchange (NYSE) by analysing tick data. The predictions were in the very short term as tick data is the most granular level reported in financial data. The workers used ten technical analysis indicators from three broad classes, namely trend indicators, oscillators to find market reversals and momentum indicators to measure

the strength of the market. Combinations of indicators, typically from the different categories are usually combined by market participants into a variety of systems. In this study the ten indicators can form a possible 1023 combinations. A genetic algorithm was used to determine the best combination of indicators for each stock, resulting in a customised combination for each. Using each stock's indicators, the next ten ticks of data were modelled with very high accuracy, with predictions for IBM's stock being the best at a very impressive up to 82%.

## 2.2 Time Series

The study of forecasting time series data has been an active area of study for several decades and an overview of work over 25 years has been documented by [De Gooijer and Hyndman \(2006\)](#). Series data is ordered such that the ordering is an important if not critical aspect of the data and the requirement to maintain this ordering enforces certain requirements on its processing. Series data can be ordered by factors such as distance or height but typically time is the ordering encountered, and thus such collections are referred to as time series. Analysis of time series data is found in a wide range of areas including, Sales Forecasting, Speech Recognition, Economic Forecasting, Stock Market Analysis, Process and Quality Control and Seismic Recordings.

In general with non-series data we are interested in the relationships between the attributes of any particular row of data and perhaps how they affect the parameter we are interested in. Frequently some kind of regression technique is used in this kind of analysis in order to answer questions such as how is rainfall in an area affected by altitude or how does fuel consumption vary with car engine size ([Han et al., 2011](#)).

However with time series data there is an additional consideration, the relationship between the attribute's current value to that of its previous or later values. This is known as auto-correlation ([Mills, 2011](#)) and more details can be seen in section 2.2.2.1. Typically with financial data we are interested in previous values, in other words how is today's closing price affected by the closing prices one, two or three days ago?

As illustrated in Figure 2.4 a time series can contain some or all of the following components:

1. Trend - the overall direction of the series, is it increasing or decreasing over time?
2. Seasonality - regular variations in the time series that is caused by re-occurring events, for example a spike in sales during the Christmas period ([So and Chung, 2014](#)).

3. Random component - additional fluctuations in the series that may be attributed to noise or other random events.

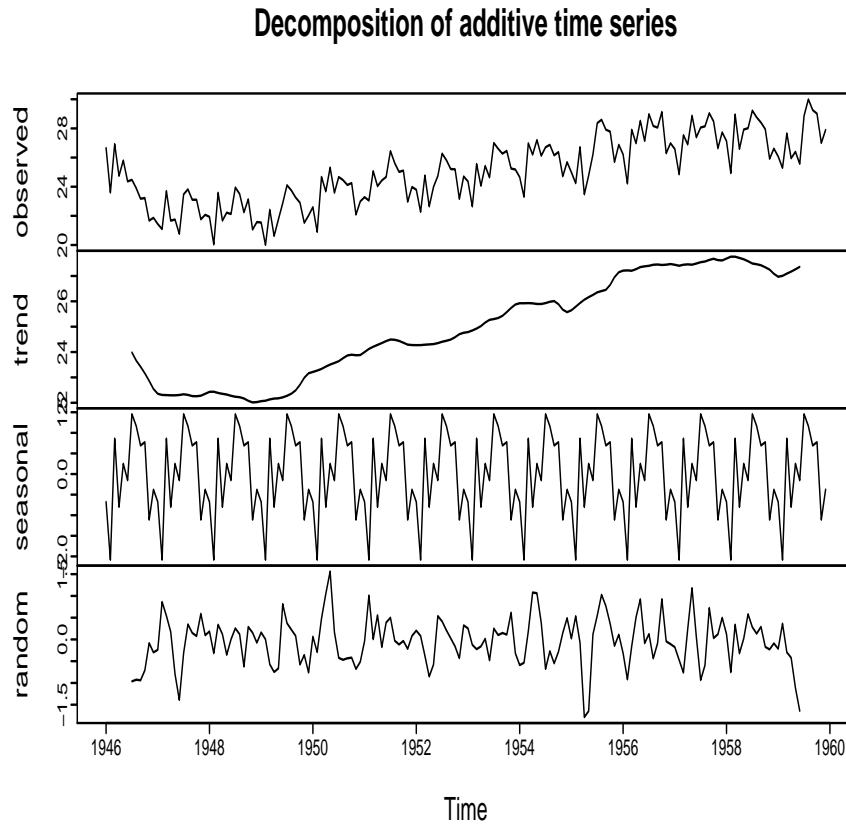


FIGURE 2.4: A time series decomposed into its three primary components.

g:TimeSeriesComponents>

There are three primary types of time series, stationary, additive and multiplicative. Stationary series have constant amplitude without a trend element and an example can be seen in Figure 2.5. Often stationary time series are repetitive, in other words showing constant auto-correlation and are considered the easiest type to model. A stationary time series can be composed of a seasonal element and/or a random component, thus:

$$\text{stationary time series} = \text{seasonality} +/\text{or noise}$$

The second type of time series is the additive type. In this type all three components of the series are present, trend, seasonality and noise. The distinguishing feature here is the amplitude of the seasonal component in that it is quite regular being static over time. An example of an additive series can be seen in Figure 2.6. This time series is trending upwards overall but there is a clear repetitive pattern of peaks and troughs caused by the seasonality, with the heights of the peaks all being similar. We can consider an additive time series as:

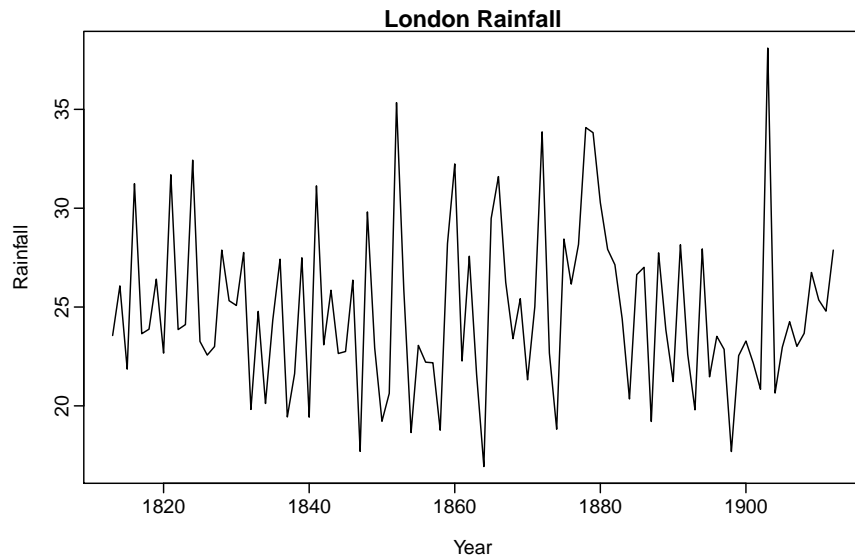


FIGURE 2.5: Example of a stationary time series which can be made up from noise and/or a seasonal component.

`<fig:Stationary_ts>`

$$\text{additive time series} = \text{trend} + \text{seasonality} + \text{noise}$$

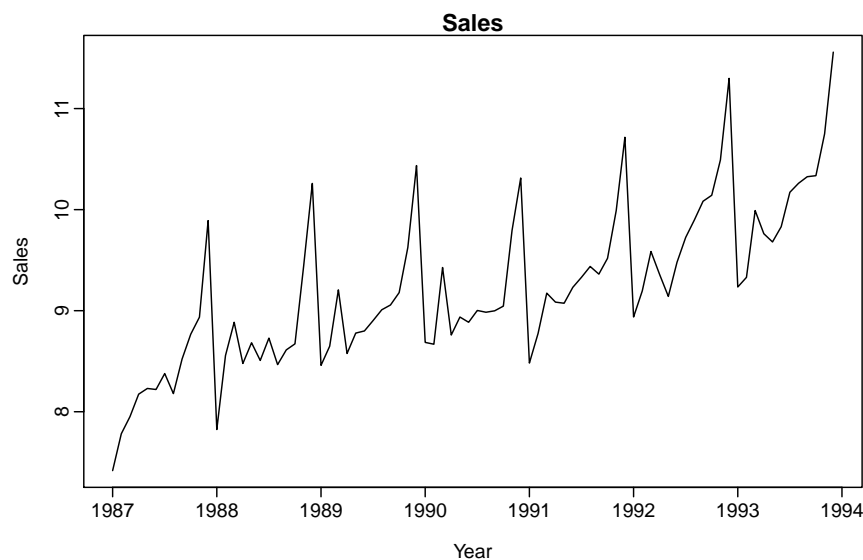


FIGURE 2.6: Example of an additive time series which results from all three components trend, noise and seasonality.

`<fig:Add2_ts>`

The third type of time series, as seen in Figure 2.7 is multiplicative. This is similar to the additive version except the amplitude of the seasonality increases over time. It can be considered as:

$$\text{multiplicative time series} = \text{trend} * \text{seasonality} * \text{noise}$$

Financial time series can be considered as containing all three elements of a time series. They can show properties of a stationary time series when they are range bound and only

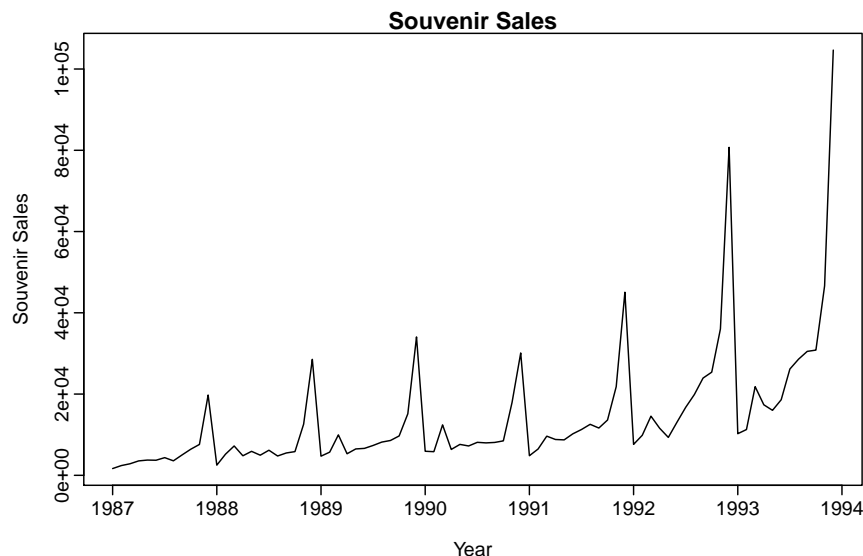


FIGURE 2.7: Example of a multiplicative time series resulting from the effects of trend, noise and seasonality.

(fig:Multi\_ts)

move between two values. At other times, markets trend strongly consistently, making new highs or lows and exhibit properties of an additive and occasionally a multiplicative series.

### 2.2.1 Time Series Smoothing

?(sec:expsmoothing)?

Smoothing is an important and widely adopted method to predict financial markets. Recent work on smoothing time series data has its origins in [Brown \(1959\)](#), [Brown \(1963\)](#), [Holt \(2004\)](#) and [Winters \(1960\)](#). Typically, the various smoothing techniques encountered are based around the concept of moving averages. This section will introduce a variety of smoothing methods commonly encountered in forecasting financial data.

#### 2.2.1.1 Simple Moving Average (SMA)

(sec:chp2\_sma)

A simple moving average is calculated from the value itself and its neighbours, which can be ahead or behind in the series. In this study values behind the current value are considered. The number of previous values included is often referred to as the “window”, so if one was to consider the current value and four previous ones this would be considered a simple moving average of lag 5 (SMA5). An example of a simple moving average can be seen in Table [2.1](#), where a SMA5 of the closing price has been added.



TABLE 2.1: Example of a simple moving average of the closing price with a lag of 5 periods.

Date	Open	High	Low	Close	SMA5
02/01/14	9598	9621	9394	9400	NA
03/01/14	9410	9453	9368	9435	NA
06/01/14	9419	9469	9400	9428	NA
07/01/14	9446	9519	9417	9506	NA
08/01/14	9513	9516	9468	9498	9453
09/01/14	9492	9550	9403	9422	9458
10/01/14	9474	9530	9441	9473	9465
13/01/14	9498	9519	9457	9510	9482

<tab:SMA>

### 2.2.1.2 Weighted Moving Average (WMA)

A simple moving average assigns equal importance to all data points being averaged, however if this is considered unsuitable a higher weighting can be applied to certain data points elevating their importance in the average and thus generating a weighted moving average (Devicic, 2010). Typically the more recent data points in a time series would be given higher importance. One common version of a WMA is to decrease the weighting by one for each period in the average. The formula for calculating a weighted moving average is:

$$((n * P_n) + (n - 1 * P_{n-1}) + ... (n - (n - 1) * P_{n-(n-1)})) \div (n + (n - 1) + ... n - (n - 1))$$

where:

$n$  = the number of periods used in calculating the moving average

$P_n$  = the price of the most recent period used to calculate the moving average

An extra column has been added to the data in Table 2.1 which contains the WMA for the last five close values. The current value was multiplied by 5, the previous one by 4, the previous one to that by 3 and so on. These five values were added together and divided by 5+4+3+2+1 to generate the WMA as shown in Table 2.2.

### 2.2.1.3 Exponential Moving Average (EMA)

An exponential moving average (EMA) is an extension of the weighted moving average (Ord, 2004). In comparison to the simple moving average, greater emphasis is given to the most recent data points and the resulting averaged values are closer to the actual

TABLE 2.2: Example of a weighted moving average.

Date	Open	High	Low	Close	SMA5	WMA5
02/01/14	9598	9621	9394	9400	NA	NA
03/01/14	9410	9453	9368	9435	NA	NA
06/01/14	9419	9469	9400	9428	NA	NA
07/01/14	9446	9519	9417	9506	NA	NA
08/01/14	9513	9516	9468	9498	9453	9471
09/01/14	9492	9550	9403	9422	9458	9461
10/01/14	9474	9530	9441	9473	9465	9466
13/01/14	9498	9519	9457	9510	9482	9481

<tab:WMA>

observations of the data set. Weighting factors decay exponentially resulting in the emphasis falling on the recent values though not discarding the older ones totally. See Appendix B for full details.

2.2.1.4 Moving Averages in Practical Use

Moving averages are widely used in the financial world to predict the start of trends which is important as trends are considered the best opportunity to make profits from the markets. By their nature moving averages are lagged indicators in that they reflect market action from the past (recent or distant depending on the lag variable) and this can be considered a drawback. The lag period offers a trade off in terms of prediction. If the lag is short and/or weighting is applied the average is affected strongly by recent prices and trends can be detected in the early stages and trading profits can be enhanced. However when the average is close to the current price they have a tendency to generate “false signals” (see section 2.1.1 for an explanation of entry and exit signals), in other words prices may start to rise (or fall) but they are not actually in a trend, it is just the natural wax and wane of the market, and traders are said to be “whipsawed”. When the lag variable is long a different problem is encountered. For example, if a price moves above a long moving average the indicated trend is usually genuine, however by the time this is reflected in the average a lot of the trend has developed and the trader has lost a lot of potential profits. Thus there are pros and cons associated with using the different types of moving average.

2.2.1.5 Holt-Winters Smoothing Models

<sec:holtwinters>

The exponential smoothing of a time series containing noise, trend and seasonality was developed by Winters (1960) who as a student of Holt, built upon his previous work, and is today called the Holt-Winters method. This method defines three parameters

alpha, beta and gamma which define the degree of smoothing to be applied to the three components of the time series. Firstly, a value of alpha is used to dictate the amount of smoothing to apply, with high smoothing factors placing more emphasis on recent data points at the expense of those further away. In a data set with trend this simple exponential moving average doesn't perform well and a second order of smoothing is needed, so called "double exponential smoothing". The parameter beta in Holt-Winters defines this second order smoothing. Finally if a seasonal component is also present in the data set a third level of smoothing is introduced making the process a triple exponential smoothing. It is this third level of smoothing that the parameter gamma refers to. Depending upon the nature of the time series one, two or all three of the parameters may be defined in the Holt-Winters methodology.

If researching a time series with no seasonality or trend use of the Holt-Winters model with the beta and gamma parameters set to false, in other words not used, is appropriate. Figure 2.8 shows the addition of an exponential smoothing line to the stationary data set introduced in Figure 2.5.

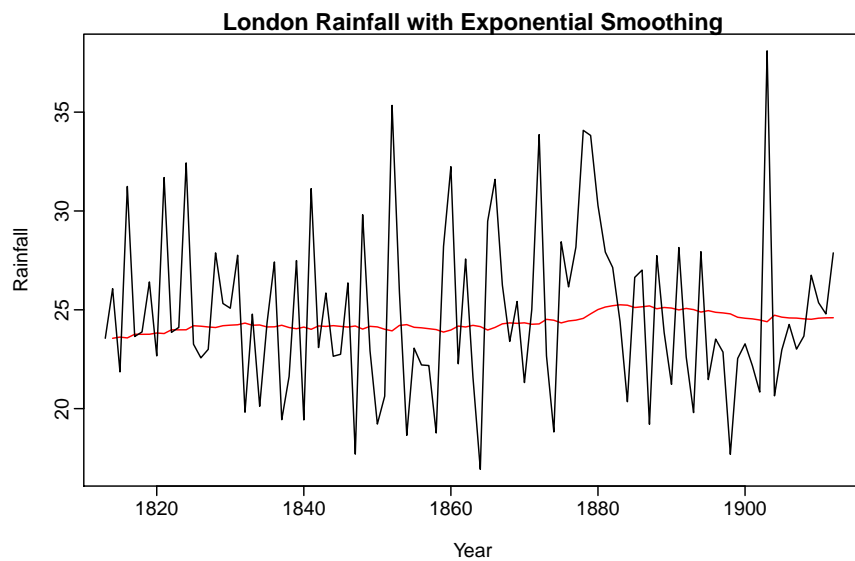


FIGURE 2.8: A time series with no seasonality or trend, showing the fitted line generated from Holt-Winters exponential smoothing with the beta and gamma parameters set to false.

(fig:HW1a)

If the time series is additive with a trend but without seasonality the use of Holt-Winters with values used for alpha and beta but with the gamma parameter set to false is appropriate. Such a time series can be seen in Figure 2.9 with the exponential smoothing. Finally if the time series contains all three components a smoothing line can be fitted using Holt-Winters exponential smoothing in which there are values for all three terms alpha, beta and gamma. Figure 2.10 is an example of a time series with both trend and seasonality and overlaid with Holt-Winters smoothing generated by using values for all three terms in the smoothing algorithm.

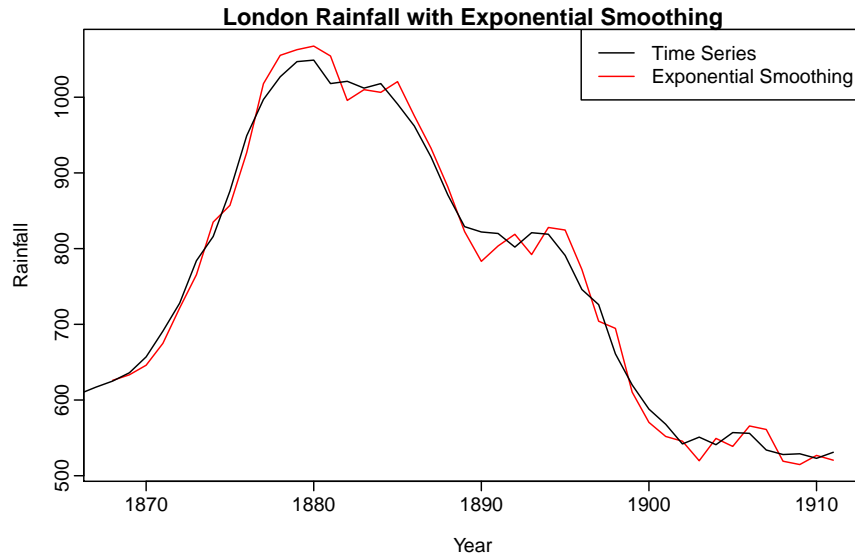


FIGURE 2.9: A time series with trend though no seasonality, showing the fitted Holt-Winters exponential smoothing with the gamma parameter set to false.

`<fig:HW2a>`

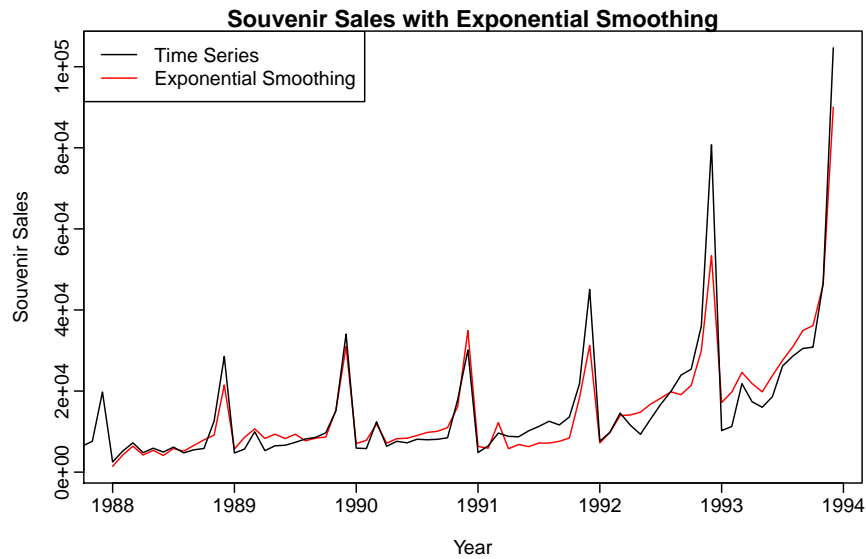


FIGURE 2.10: A time series with trend and seasonality, showing the fitted Holt-Winters exponential smoothing.

`<fig:HW3a>`

## 2.2.2 Auto-Regression Family of Models

### 2.2.2.1 Auto-Regression

`<sec:autoregression>`

Regression is the study of the impact of known variables (independent) on an unknown (dependent) variable and addresses questions such as how does a persons income vary with their years of education. The general equation for linear regression is given by:

$$y = a + bx + \varepsilon$$

where:

$a$  is the intercept.

$b$  is the co-efficient.

$x$  is the independent variable.

$\varepsilon$  is the error term.

In reality there are often a large number of independent variables that affect the unknown under study and thus multiple regression, shown below, is usually of interest.

$$y_1 = a + b_1x_{1i} + b_2x_{2i} + \dots + b_nx_{ni} + \varepsilon$$

In a time series the preceding values often have a bearing on the current data point, and this is especially important in financial time series data. Thus auto-regression is the prediction of the current point from the use of previous values of the data point itself, and is given by:

$$t_t = c + b_1 * r_{t-1} + b_2 * r_{t-2} \dots b_p * r_{t-p} + \varepsilon$$

where:

$c$  is the intercept, is often zero and the mean of the time series.

$b_1 - b_p$  are the independent variables, the previous values.

$\varepsilon$  is random noise.

### 2.2.3 Auto-Regressive Moving Average (ARMA)

`<sec:arma>`

The auto-regressive moving average (ARMA) model, also known as Box-Jenkins ([Box and Jenkins, 1970](#)), combines moving averages with auto-regression. A model that uses moving averages to predict current values is given by:

$$-r_t = c + a_1 * ma_{t-1} + a_2 * ma_{t-2} \dots a_q * ma_{t-q} + err_t$$

ARMA combines the moving average model with auto-regressive terms to generate:

$$\begin{aligned} r(t) = & c + \\ & b_1 * r_{t-1} + b_2 * r_{t-2} \dots b_p * r_{t-p} + \\ & a_1 * ma_{t-1} + a_2 * ma_{t-2} \dots a_q * ma_{t-q} \\ & + err \end{aligned}$$

where:

$c$  is the intercept, which is often zero and the mean of the time series.

$b_1 - b_p$  are the independent variables, the previous values in the auto-regression term.

$a_1 - a_p$  are parameters of the moving average model.

$\varepsilon$  is random noise.

An ARMA(1,1) model uses the previous value in the auto-regression term and the previous value's moving average. Thus in general terms an ARMA(p,q) model uses the previous p values in the auto-regression term and the moving averages derived from the last q values. There are therefore three steps in developing an ARMA model:

1. identification step in which the order of AR and MA components is determined
2. parameter estimation
3. forecasting

ARMA models have certain intrinsic properties that may be considered drawbacks, namely the requirement for the time series to be stationary with no trend and also linear and the difficulty in deriving the correct parameters to use in the model. In order to overcome these restrictions researchers have tried a number of approaches to enhance the effectiveness of ARMA models.

The problem of model and parameter selection in ARMA models has also been addressed by [Rojas et al. \(2008\)](#). The authors make the point that in traditional research choosing the correct model is time consuming and requires a large degree of expertise. In order to circumvent these issues they propose an automatic model selection method to speed up the process, remove the need for expert intervention and allow the processing of a large number of time series. In a similar study [Qian and Zhao \(2007\)](#) investigate how to determine model selection where there are potentially millions of candidate ARMA models available for the time series. Again, the authors propose an automatic selection algorithm centred on the Gibbs sampler. The proposed method allows for various problems typically encountered in selecting ARMA models and the resulting choice was used to generate a prediction of China's Consumer Price Index (CPI).

## 2.2.4 Auto-Regressive Integrated Moving Average (ARIMA)

`<sec:arima>`

One limitation with the ARMA model and indeed other approaches is that it is assumed that the time series is stationary, it doesn't have trend and has constant variance and mean ([Shumway and Stoffer, 2010](#)). In reality of course many time series data sets have

trend, and in the world of financial data this is also true. In order to account for trend in a time series it is often transformed into a stationary data set, modelling is then performed on this adapted data after which it is returned to its original state. In effect the trend aspect is removed, modelling is done, then the trend component is added back into the data.

One such method for removing trend is differencing (Mills, 2011). Differencing is the technique of replacing the actual values of the observations with the values of the differences between them. This is represented as:

$$Diff1_t = r_t - r_{t-1}$$

Differencing is the same as calculating the derivative of the series, thus a time series that has undergone differencing is considered “integrated”. If taking this so-called first difference doesn’t remove the trend one can go further and use the second difference:

$$Diff2_t = (r_t - r_{t-1}) - (r_{t-1} - r_{t-2})$$

Addition of an integration step to the ARMA model results in an auto-regressive integrated moving average (ARIMA) model, with the general formula:

$$\begin{aligned} r(t) = & c + \\ & b_1 * r_{t-1} + b_2 * r_{t-2} \dots b_p * r_{t-p} + \\ & a_1 * ma_{t-1} + a_2 * ma_{t-2} \dots a_q * ma_{t-q} \\ & d_1 * diff_{t-1} + d_2 * diff_{t-2} \dots d_d * diff_{t-d} \\ & + err \end{aligned}$$

where:

$c$  is the intercept, which is often zero and the mean of the time series.

$b_1 - b_p$  are the independent variables, the previous values in the auto-regression term.

$a_1 - a_p$  are parameters of the moving average model.

$d_1 - d_p$  are the parameters of the differencing term.  $\varepsilon$  is random noise.

ARIMA models are usually referenced as ARIMA(p,d,q) with p the number of terms used in the auto-regression, d the number of differencing terms and q the number of

terms used in the moving average. A summary of which model (Holt-Winters, ARMA or ARIMA) to use with which type of time series can be seen in Table 2.3.

TABLE 2.3: Appropriate models for use with time series data.

Model	Time Series Required	Assumes Correlation	Trend	Seasonality
Holt-Winters	Short Term	N	Y	Y
ARMA	Stationary	Y	N	Y
ARIMA	Non-stationary: Additive or Multiplicative	Y	Y	Y

<tab:tsmodelsummary>

### 2.2.5 ARIMA Parameter Selection

<sec:acf>

An important aspect of building time series models with ARIMA techniques is the choice of parameters to use. Auto-correlation (AC) and partial auto-correlation (PAC) are important measures in the selection process of these parameters (Mills, 2011).

Correlation is the measure of how one variable changes with a second one. For example if variable A increases while variable B increases they are positively correlated and conversely they are negatively correlated when one decreases as the other increases. Further, correlations are measured by degree on a scale of 1 to -1, with 1 being perfectly correlated. A value of 1 indicates that the two variables increase together perfectly in sync, whereas a value of -1 suggests that as one variable increases the other decreases by the same amount. Finally a value of 0 is indicative of no correlation at all between the two variables.

Auto-correlation is the correlation between an attributes value now and the same attribute's value in the past or future (Shumway and Stoffer, 2010). Typically with financial data we are interested in the correlation with values in the past. The interval between the value of interest and the previous observation used in determining the correlation is known as the lag. Thus the correlation between the current observation and the previous one may be of interest, and this is a lag of +1, while a value five time intervals previous is +5. Non-intuitively positive values for lags refer to the past while negative values are in the future.

A correlogram is a matrix plot of auto-correlations over a series of time lags. Correlograms are used in checking data for randomness and in the model identification stage of the ARMA methodology (see section 2.2.3). Data is considered random if the auto-correlation value is close to zero. In general a data set's randomness needs to be checked



in order to confirm the validity of many statistical tests. Thus a correlogram helps to determine if data is random or if an observation is related to an earlier one, thereby helping in the determination of an appropriate ARMA model.

Figure 2.11 is the correlogram of a data set built-in to R, called `AirPassenger`, over a range of lags from 1 to 80.

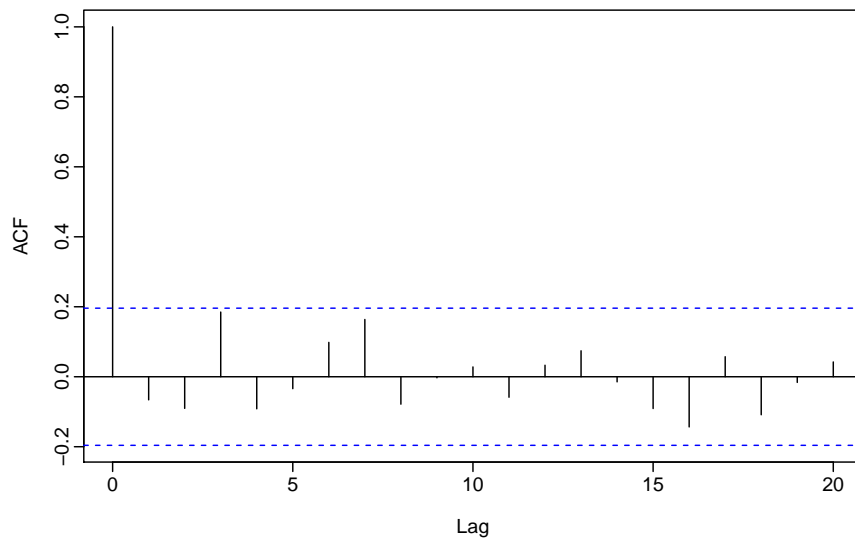


FIGURE 2.11: Correlogram of `AirPassenger` data a built-in data set of R, over a range of time lags from 1 to 80.

`<fig:acf80>`

The partial correlation is defined as the degree of correlation not already explained by the correlations previously measured. If the regression of variable A on variables B1, B2 and B3 is considered the partial correlation between variables A and B3 is the degree of correlation not accounted for by their common correlations with variables B1 and B2. In a similar manner the partial autocorrelation is the unexplained correlation after considering the variable and itself at an earlier time period. In a series, if a variable A at time t is correlated with an earlier lag at time t-1 it follows that the variable at t-1 itself is correlated with the previous variable at lag t-2. By extension the variable at time t should also be correlated with the variable at lag t-2, as the correlation will propagate through the series. The partial autocorrelation is the difference the expected correlations due the propagating factors and the actual correlation measured.

`<todo3>`

The lag at which the PAC tails off can be a good candidate for the AR aspect, looking at Figure ?? this is three - ARMA(3,0)

The AC indicates potential values for the MA component, looking at Figure 2.11 this is one - ARMA(0,1)

A third alternative is an ARMA(p,q) as both the AC and PAC tail off to zero.

Generally one would start with the simplest model so an ARMA(0,1) should be a good place to start the modelling.

### 2.2.6 Hybrid Models

Auto-regressive (integrated) moving average models have shown themselves to be important modelling methods for time series data, including financial time series data. However the techniques have limitations that have detracted from their popularity, namely their assumption of a linear relationship and the need for a lot of data to produce accurate results. In order to address these limitations a variety of hybrid solutions have been proposed in which ARIMA models are combined with other techniques, often non-linear prediction algorithms ([Wang et al., 2012](#), [Khashei and Bijari, 2012](#), [Aladag et al., 2009](#)).

One combination that has found a lot of attention in the literature is the combination of Artificial Neural Networks (ANNs) with ARIMA. [Khashei et al. \(2009\)](#) report on the use of this combination in an attempt to predict the future price movement in gold and US dollar / Iran rials financial markets. The workers report favourable results in comparison to the techniques alone and suggest the method as having potential for accurate predictions of non-linear time series data. In a similar study [Zhang \(2003\)](#) applied a combination of ARIMA and ANN to various data sets including the British pound / US dollar exchange rate. They observe that in the literature in general these two popular techniques are frequently compared in terms of predictive power with the reported results non-conclusive. Results from the three data sets modelled show that the combination of the two methods outperform the individual ones when the mean squared error (MSE) and mean absolute deviation (MAD) are used as the measure of forecasting accuracy.

[Fatima and Hussain \(2008\)](#) also investigated the impact of a hybrid approach in modelling short term predictions for the Karachi Stock Exchange index (KSE100). The authors reported comparison results for ANN versus ARIMA and a hybrid of ANN/ARIMA. The hybrid solution out-performed the individual ARIMA and ANN models. It is postulated that a rationale for this is that at any point in time financial markets are subject to linear, non-linear and volatility patterns as the cumulative effects of government fiscal and monetary policies and general rumour and political instabilities feed into the market. Under these complex conditions simple models can only capture one aspect of the underlying factors affecting the price series. A hybrid combination approach is more successful as more of the market variance is modelled.

[Kriechbaumer et al. \(2014\)](#) reports on a further hybrid approach to forecast the prices of aluminum, copper, lead and zinc. Previous research has indicated that these markets

exhibit a strong cyclic behaviour. In an attempt to factor this into the predictive model ARIMA was coupled with a wavelet approach. Wavelet analysis decomposes a time series into its frequency and time domains in an attempt to isolate this cyclic behaviour. The performance of the ARIMA modelling was shown to be enhanced substantially by the addition of wavelet based multi-resolution analysis (MRA) before performing the ARIMA analysis.

[Tan et al. \(2010\)](#) have also reported the combination of wavelet analysis and ARIMA in the prediction of electricity prices. The general method employed is to transform the original time series data set into a collection of sub-series through the application of wavelet analysis. Subsequent to the transformation a prediction for each sub-series can be made with ARIMA modelling. The final forecasted result is obtained by reforming the sub-series back into the original time series. The authors report resulting showing the enhanced predictive power of the ARIMA wavelet hybrid approach compared to ARIMA and GARCH models used in isolation.

[Pai and Lin \(2005\)](#) reported on attempts to overcome the limitation of ARIMA models in that the time series must be linear by use of an hybrid ARIMA / Support vector machine (SVMs) combination. SVMs have been successfully applied to non-linear regression problems and the authors have harnessed the strengths of both methodologies in order to predict the prices of a selection of fifty stocks. Results from the work show that the hybrid method out-performs the ARIMA and SVM methods individually.

[Rout et al. \(2014\)](#) report the use of ARMA models in the prediction of exchange rates. The workers note the limitations of ARMA in that the time series data must be linear and stationary, a condition often not met in practical situations and the difficulty in deriving steps one and two (listed previously) in developing the ARMA model. In order to overcome these limitations ARMA is combined with differential evolution (DE) in order to determine the models feed-forward and feed-back parameters. The results from the prediction models generated are compared with models resulting from ARMA in conjunction with particle swarm optimisation (PSO), cat swarm optimisation (CSO), bacterial foraging optimization (BFO) and forward backward least mean square (FBLMS). The workers conclude that the ARMA - DE model produces the best short and long-range predictions from the options tested and is a potentially valuable method in predicting exchange rates on the international finance markets.

## Chapter 3

# Methodology

⟨Chapter3⟩

### 3.1 Data Collection

The data used in this study was freely collected from the Yahoo finance web site ([www.yahoo.com](http://www.yahoo.com)).

### 3.2 Data Quality

The data is of high quality with no missing values. It represents the opening, high, low and closing prices for each day that the particular market indice was open for trading.

### 3.3 Data Description

Data from a variety of national stock market indices was employed in this study. The indices were from a variety of geographic locations with FTSE (UK), DAX (Germany) and CAC (France) all being in Europe, the Dow is from the US, the Nikkei from Japan and AORD from Australia. The data is in the form of so-called daily OHLC (daily open, high, low and close prices) for Monday to Friday (excluding appropriate national holidays) for the period 2000 until the end of 2013. A schematic representation of daily OHLC data can be seen in Figure 3.1. The data sets are freely available from the finance section of Yahoo's website ([www.yahoo.com](http://www.yahoo.com)). The first six observations from the DAX data set (German national indice) can be seen in Table 3.1.

The final six observations from the DAX data set can be seen in Table 3.2. Over the period of the data (2000 until the end of 2013) the Dax started at 6691 and finished at

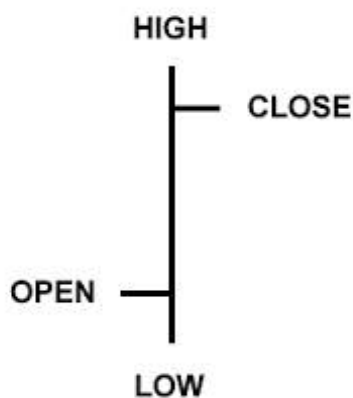


FIGURE 3.1: A schematic representation of open, high, low and closing prices (OHLC).

`<fig:chp3_ohlc>`

9552. Summary statistics for the Dax data set can be seen in Table 3.3. The data set contains 3621 observations and the closing price has ranged between 2202 and 9742 over the period. A graph of the closing prices from 2000 to 2013 can be seen in Figure 3.2 and a graph for 2013 can be seen in Figure 3.3.

TABLE 3.1: First 6 rows of the Dax data set

`<tab:daxhead>`

Date	Open	High	Low	Close
03/01/2000	6962	7159	6721	6751
04/01/2000	6747	6755	6510	6587
05/01/2000	6586	6586	6389	6502
06/01/2000	6501	6539	6403	6475
07/01/2000	6490	6792	6470	6781
10/01/2000	6785	6975	6785	6926

TABLE 3.2: Final 6 rows of the Dax data set

`<tab:daxtail>`

Date	Open	High	Low	Close
13/12/2013	9017	9047	8991	9006
16/12/2013	9005	9188	8998	9164
17/12/2013	9143	9162	9085	9085
18/12/2013	9145	9191	9122	9182
19/12/2013	9280	9352	9257	9336
20/12/2013	9371	9413	9353	9400

TABLE 3.3: Summary statistics of the Dax data set.

`<tab:daxsum>`

Statistic	N	Mean	St. Dev	Min	Max
Open	3,621	5,858.36	1,559.40	2,203.97	9,752.11
High	3,621	5,906.70	1,561.17	2,319.65	9,794.05
Low	3,621	5,804.85	1,557.49	2,188.75	9,714.02
Close	3,621	5,857.74	1,559.39	2,202.96	9,742.96

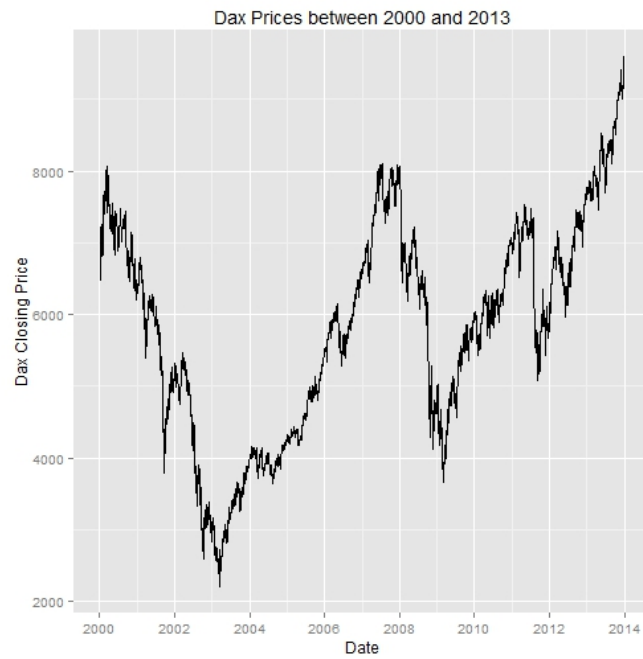


FIGURE 3.2: Graph of German Dax between 2000 and 2013.

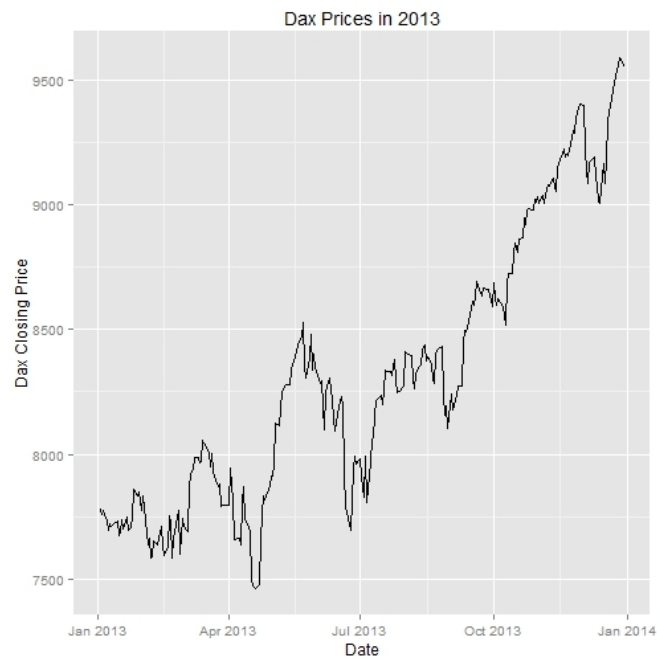
`<fig:Dax2000_2013>`

FIGURE 3.3: Graph of German Dax in 2013.

`<fig:Dax2013>`

Each data set has a particular set of characteristics and these are important when technical analysis and other analytical techniques are applied to the data set. A variety of these are explored in the following sections. The average amount a market moves is investigated and the term Average True Range is introduced and defined for the data sets. Where the opening and closing prices are in relation to the previous day's high and low values are also considered. Finally the distance between the day's opening and high prices and opening to low prices are investigated. The relative ratios of these values are important when considering which technical analysis may be best suited to a particular market.

### 3.3.1 Average True Range (ATR)

`<chp3:atr>`

Wilder (1978) introduced the concept of Average True Range (ATR) as a way to measure a market's volatility or the amount the price is likely to move in any one day. Initially the True Range (TR) is calculated as the maximum of:

1. the today's high price minus today's low price.
2. the absolute value of the today's high minus the previous day's closing price.
3. the absolute value of the today's low minus the previous day's closing price.

Having calculated the TR, an average of a previous number of days is used to derive the ATR. Typically the TR values from the previous 14 days are used.

Absolute values are used in the calculation of the ATR as we are not concerned with the market direction but rather the the amount the market is likely to move. ATRs are typically quoted as absolute values and as such markets trading at higher prices will have higher ATRs. For example the Japanese Nikkei with a value of 14000 will move more in a day than the French CAC with a value in the 4000's.

Dividing the ATR by the closing price is a useful way to see how a security's volatility varies over time. Table 3.4 and Figure 3.4 are the ATR and ATR divided by closing price for the Dax between 2000 and 2013. In absolute terms the ATR varied between 36 and 316, however the value of the indice itself varied a lot. Looking at the ATR value divided by the closing period it can be seen that over the period of 2000 to 2014 the mean value is approximately 2. Thus on average the market can be expected to move 2% of the closing price in any one day. However this value has varied between 0.7% in periods of low volatility to a value of 6.7%.

TABLE 3.4: ATR and ATR divided by closing price for the Dax between 2000 and 2013

`<tab:atr_dax>`

Statistic	N	Mean	St. Dev	Min	Max
ATR	3,556	108.29	45.53	36.07	316.04
ATR/Close	3,556	1.995	1.065	0.700	6.740

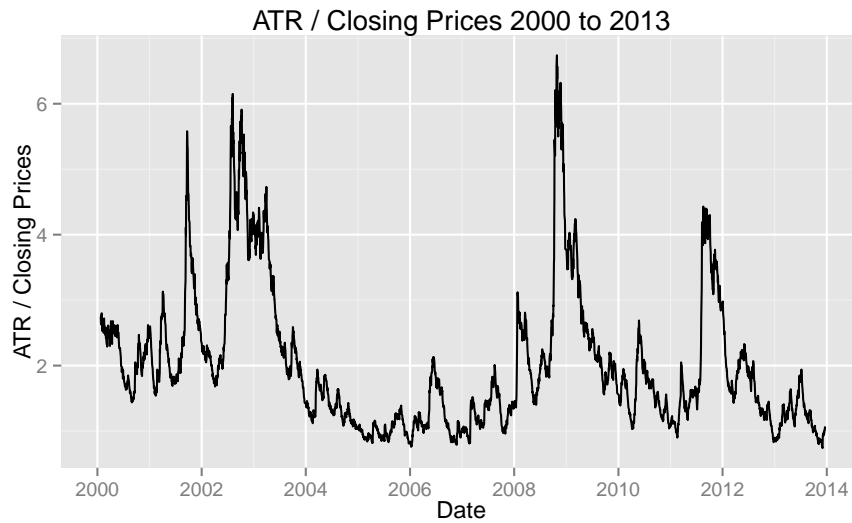


FIGURE 3.4: ATR of Dax divided by closing price between 2000 and 2013.

`<fig:Dax_atr>`

### 3.3.2 Opening Price

Where a market opens in relation to the previous day's high and low price varies across the data sets. This is important and can influence the technical analysis indicator or trading system to utilise. Table 3.5 lists opening price statistics for a variety of national indices. The table lists the number of times that opening prices are between the previous day's high and low prices. These statistics are useful in characterising a market in terms how they move out of hours and can have an impact when choosing a trading system.

TABLE 3.5: Opening prices in relation to the previous day's high and low values.

`<tab:openprices>`

Market	Opening Price between Previous Day's High and Low (%)
Dax	75
FTSE	90
CAC	60
Dow	98
Nikkei	53
AORD	79



### 3.3.3 Closing Price

<sec:closing\_prices>

In a similar fashion to the opening prices the position of the closing prices in relation to the previous day's high and low price are also of interest. In this case, the percentage of closes outside the previous high / low price may indicate that the market may be a good choice for a breakout type of trading system (see section 4.6.1 for details of breakout systems). Likewise the opposite situation occurs if a market frequently finishes within the previous day's high and low levels and may be a candidate for a reversal type of system. The statistics for various national indices can be seen in Table 3.6. Looking at these figures it would suggest that the Dow with a low ratio of finishing outside the previous period's high low values may be a candidate for a reversal type of system and conversely the Japanese Nikkei has a high percentage value and potentially a candidate for a break-out system.

TABLE 3.6: Number of occasions when closing prices finished outside the previous day's high or low values.

<tab:closeHL>

Market	Closing Price outside Previous Day's High and Low (%)
Dax	56
FTSE	56
CAC	58
Dow	39
Nikkei	63
AORD	60

The range from opening price to closing price, either up or down, is of interest. Table 3.7 lists the minimum and maximum values in this range and Table 3.8 shows the quantiles for this price range.

TABLE 3.7: Minimum and maximum values for the open to close price range.

<tab:OCrange>

Market	Min Value	Max Value
Dax	0	508
FTSE	0	431
CAC	0	313
Dow	0	950
Nikkei	0	1333
AORD	0	347

### 3.3.4 High / Low Price

Table 3.9 shows the percentage of times that either today's high price crosses yesterday's high or today's low prices dips below the yesterday's low value. The final closing price

TABLE 3.8: Quantile values for the open to close price range.

`<tab:OCQuantile>`

Market	25%	50%	75%	90%
Dax	16	39	75	508
FTSE	15	33	63	431
CAC	11	26	49	313
Dow	27	61	119	950
Nikkei	32	71	133	1333
AORD	8	19	36	347

may be between yesterday's high and low or outside of it. The second column of Table 3.9 is the number of times when today's values crossed both the previous low and the previous high in the same day. This is also known as an Engulfing Candlestick (see section 4.7.2). In all the indices the previous day's high or low value is reached the following day in a large number of instances, in the case of the Nikkei 90% of the time. Conversely, the likelihood of both the previous day's high and low values being touched are low, only 5% of occasions in the Australian AORD.

TABLE 3.9: Number of occasions when today's high or low prices crossed the previous day's high or low values.

`<tab:highlow>`

Market	Crosses either previous day's High or Low (%)	Crosses both the previous day's High and Low (%)
Dax	89	9
FTSE	87	8
CAC	90	10
Dow	88	9
Nikkei	90	8
AORD	86	5

### 3.3.5 OH/OL Price Fluctuations

`<sec:ohol:fluctuation>`

The movements in prices between the open and high (OH) and open to low (OL) are interesting and can have an influence on any trading systems developed. On any given day prices open, move to their lowest point, move to their highest point and then close (not in any particular order). From the OHLC data used in this study the order of these events can not be determined or even the number of times in a day these price points are reached.

In this section we are concerned with the relative sizes of these two price movements, the day's high price minus the opening price (OH) and the opening price minus the low price (OL), one of which is usually greater than the other. We will define the daily "minor"

price fluctuation as the smaller of the two price movements. Likewise we will define the larger value as the “mayor” price fluctuation.

Considering the minor price fluctuation, the range of values encountered in the indice markets under study can be seen in Table 3.10. In all cases the minimum value is zero, in other words the market opening price and either the day’s high or low price were the same, the market didn’t dip below or above this level. The second column in Table 3.10 is the maximum value. In the case of the German Dax, there was a day when the market moved 189 points away from its opening price but also moved further in the opposite direction away from the opening price. Clearly this was a highly volatile day on the German markets.

TABLE 3.10: Minimum and maximum values for the smaller of the daily OH or OL price movement - the “minor” move.

(tab:minorOH)

Market	Min Value	Max Value
Dax	0	189
FTSE	0	186
CAC	0	134
Dow	0	379
Nikkei	0	310
AORD	0	114

The quantiles of the minor price movements can be seen in Table 3.11. The 90% quantile is the level at which 90% of the time the minor move is less than this level. This value may be important to know and understand when considering break-out type of systems (see section 4.6). Looking at the value of the Dax we can see that the 90% quantile level occurs at 46, which indicates that if the market has moved to this level it is unlikely to be the day’s minor move (whose level 90% of the time is below this). Perhaps a break-out type of system may be profitable at this point, as once the market has moved this far it is usually a major move and may be expected to continue further in the same direction.

TABLE 3.11: Quantile values for the smaller of the days OH or OL price movement - the “minor” move.

(tab:minorOHQ)

Market	25%	50%	75%	90%
Dax	5	15	29	46
FTSE	0	7	20	33
CAC	4	11	19	31
Dow	12	43	75	113
Nikkei	5	21	43	72
AORD	0	1	7	13

In contrast to the minor daily price fluctuation, the “major” price fluctuation is defined as the largest of the OH or OL values. The range of values encountered in this price

fluctuation in the indice markets can be seen in Table 3.12 and the quantiles of the major price movements can be seen in Table 3.13. Considering the Dax once more, it can be seen that the 25% quantile is approximately equal to the 90% quantile of the minor fluctuation. Thus if the Dax moves approximately 50 points away from the opening it is unlikely to be the smaller of the price movements and much more likely to be part of the larger movement. Knowledge of the minor and major price fluctuations may be useful in developing trading systems.

TABLE 3.12: Minimum and maximum values for the larger of the days OH or OL price movement - the “major” daily price fluctuation.

(tab:majorOH)

Market	Min Value	Max Value
Dax	0	530
FTSE	0	471
CAC	0	359
Dow	0	992
Nikkei	0	1737
AORD	0	347

TABLE 3.13: Quantile levels of the maximum values for the larger of the days OH or OL price movement - the “major” daily price fluctuation.

(tab:majorOHQ)

Market	25%	50%	75%
Dax	43	69	106
FTSE	37	56	86
CAC	30	45	69
Dow	92	131	190
Nikkei	76	118	184
AORD	18	30	48

A final consideration in this section is the range of the open to close prices detailed in section 3.3.3. Again considering the German Dax it can be seen that the 50% quantile value is 39 (see Table 3.14 - NOTE repeated from Table 3.8) , which is below the 90% minor fluctuation level.

TABLE 3.14: Quantile values for the open to close price range.

(tab:OCQuantile2)

Market	25%	50%	75%	90%
Dax	16	39	75	508
FTSE	15	33	63	431
CAC	11	26	49	313
Dow	27	61	119	950
Nikkei	32	71	133	1333
AORD	8	19	36	347

## 3.4 Software Tools

### 3.4.1 R and R Studio

A lot of the experimental results and graphs were produced with the open source programming language R version 3.0.2. For help in the creation and organisation of the R code for this thesis the open-source development environment R Studio version 0.98.490 was used extensively. The following packages were immensely helpful in the preparation of this thesis:

- TTR - provided technical analysis functions
- xts - irregularly spaced time series
- forecast - time series forecasting
- candlestick - Japanese candlestick patterns

### 3.4.2 Sweave

Sweave ([Leisch, 2002](#)) was employed extensively in the preparation of this manuscript. Use of this software enabled tex code to be prepared that embedded R code within it. Thus it was possible to embed results tables and graphs directly and dynamically into the published document. Changes to the code or underlying data is reflected in the manuscript directly.

### 3.4.3 Rapid Miner

### 3.4.4 Microsoft Excel and VBA

A lot of data was manipulated in Microsoft Excel and much proofing and testing done with the Visual Basic for Applications programming language built into the Microsoft Office suite of products.

## Chapter 4

# Technical Analysis

⟨Chapter4⟩

### 4.1 Introduction

This chapter investigates whether technical analysis can provide a positive expectancy for financial traders. A variety of technical analysis indicators are employed including MACD, Aroon, Stochastics Oscillator and Rate of Change (ROC) indicator. The experimental results from using these indicators are presented in groupings based on the general category of indicator such as trend identification or market reversal indicators. Some technical indicators have a role to play in more than one area, such as MACD, and as such the categorisation is quite general.

The effectiveness of a particular indicator or system is measured in terms of “points” gained, which is also referred to as “PL” (which stands for profit and loss). The results presented in this chapter are mainly based around systems in which a trade is opened and closed each day, producing a daily PL either positive or negative. The sum of all the individual days produces the total system PL and these values are reported in the results tables. For example, if the market moved from 6000 to 6200 in any one day a PL of either 200 (6200 - 6000) or -200 (6000 - 6200) depending upon which way the trade was placed, would be added to the overall system results.

In addition, the results are presented such that returns from “going Long” (expecting the market to rise) are presented separately from the opposite scenario of “going Short”. This is because market behaviour is often different while it is rising than it is while falling and systems may be more adept at predicting price movements in one of the directions. Further, transactions costs are not taken into account in the results and these would typically be 1 point per trade for the European markets, 2 points for the Dow and 10 for the Nikkei. Thus if a system made a PL of 1000 but it required 2000 trades at 2 points per trade, in reality the system would have lost money.

The results presented in this chapter and the following one are based around trading systems. Essentially the methodology concerned, technical analysis in this chapter and time series analysis in the next, attempt to predict future market direction. The values from the various indicators and forecast techniques are fed into a variety of trading algorithms which use the forecast information to decide whether to make long (expect the market to rise) or short (expect the market to fall) trades. For consistency the algorithms all return the same data object containing the following results:

1. Mkt - the name of the financial market such as Dax, FTSE etc.
2. S Loss - the value of any stop loss applied
3. LongPL - the profit or loss generated from just the “Long” trades.
4. ShortPL - the profit or loss generated from just the “Short” trades.
5. L Win % - the percentage of time the Long trades win.
6. L Trades - the number of Long trades executed.
7. Av L PL - the average profit or loss generated from each Long trade.
8. S Win % - the percentage of time the Short trades win.
9. S Trades - the number of Short trades executed.
10. Av S PL - the average profit or loss generated from each Short trade.
11. misc - miscellaneous information such as the SMA used in the algorithm.

The results from Long and Short trades in particular trading algorithm are considered separately as frequently markets behave differently as they move up as opposed to as they fall. Further, the percentage of times the algorithm results in winning trades, the number of trades and the average profit or loss (PL) for each trade is reported for both Long and Short trades. The average PL is primarily reported in the following results tables because this allows comparisons between systems that generate a lot of trades with those such as the algorithms based on candlestick patterns that results in only a small number of trades.

## 4.2 Baseline Systems - Naive Methods

Initially two very simple ideas were explored in order for the results to be used as baselines against which the technical indicators explored in the rest of the chapter can

be compared. There is an expectation that the use of technical indicators will produce systems that provide much better results than these two so-called naive systems.

The first system simply uses the idea that markets tend to increase in value over time. The algorithm applies a naive approach and simply enters a trade each day expecting the market to rise. The well-known method of "Buy and Hold" applies the same principles. The total PL of the resulting system is the the sum of all the daily close minus open prices. This approach has been named a "Naive Long System".

The second approach is equally simplistic, and again is based around opening and closing a trade each day. A notable difference from the first naive system is that the algorithm can result in either a buy or a sell (expecting the market to decline in value) occurring. If a market increased in price the previous day the algorithm "reverses" it and expects the market to fall today. Likewise if the market had fallen the previous day the system buys the market today. This idea has been named the "Naive Reversing System".

### 4.2.1 Naive Long System

The results of the naive long system can be seen in Table 4.1. The R code for the algorithm which generates the results shown in Table 4.1 can be seen in Appendix A section A.1.2.1. For comparison purposes, the opening prices of the indices in January 2000 along with the closing prices in 2013 can be seen in Table 4.2. In this period three of them increased in value (Dax, Dow and AORD) and three decreased (FTSE, CAC and Nikkei).

Interestingly, the PL produced from the Naive Long System doesn't match the price differentials seen in Table 4.2. The German Dax indice produced a marked loss in the naive system even though it actually increased 37% during this period. The Japanese Nikkei declined by over 2600 points in this period, whereas the system reported a loss of over 18000 points in the same period. On the other hand the US Dow increased by around 5000 points during the period of the study but the trading algorithm produced a positive result of almost 10000. These discrepancies can be explained by the fact that the system was using prices from the market's opening to closing times, which represents approximately eight hours of trading between 8am and 4pm local time. These price movements don't account for the rest of the hours, the so-called out of market hours, when the market prices also change. Clearly the markets show different characteristics in the amount they move during market hours compared to out of market hours. The Nikkei, Dax and CAC have a tendency to fall during market hours and rise during out of market hours. The opposite situation occurs for the Dow.



TABLE 4.1: Naive Long System. A very simple system in which the algorithm assumes the market will rise and enters a long trade each day.

`<tab:nlng_results>`

Mkt	LongPL	L Win %	Av L PL
Dax	-1714	52	0
CAC	-6725	50	-2
FTSE	149	51	0
Dow	9816	53	3
Nikkei	-18125	49	-5
AORD	972	52	0

TABLE 4.2: Prices of six national indices in January 2000 and December 2013.

`<tab:ind_start_stop>`

Date	Start 2000	End 2013	Difference	% Change
Dax	6961	9552	+2591	+37
CAC	6024	4250	-1774	-29
FTSE	6930	6749	-181	+3
Dow	11501	16576	+5075	+44
Nik	18937	16291	-2646	-14
AORD	3152	5353	+2201	+70

Altering the algorithm slightly so that a trade represents the difference between the previous closing price and today's closing price affects the results markedly. A full 24 hour period is now accounted for and the system reflects the overall market movement during this period. These results can be seen in Table 4.3 and the amended R code can be seen in Appendix A section A.1.2.2.

TABLE 4.3: Naive Long System changed such that the trading period is the previous close price minus today's close.

`<tab:nlng_results_2>`

Mkt	LongPL	L Win %	Av L PL
Dax	2649	53	1
CAC	-1667	51	0
FTSE	86	51	0
Dow	5219	53	1
Nikkei	-2712	51	-1
AORD	2229	53	1

### 4.2.2 Naive Reversing System

`<sec:naive:rev>`

The second naive method is to reverse the previous day's movement. For example, if the market closed up the previous day the algorithm follows this by trading short for the current day (the R code for this algorithm can be see in Appendix A section A.1.2.3) . The results from this system can be seen in Table 4.4.

TABLE 4.4: Results from a naive trading system which simply trades in the opposite direction to the previous day's movement.

`<tab:n_rev_results>`

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	947	3131	53	1	49	2
CAC	940	7810	53	1	53	4
FTSE	4284	4115	53	3	50	2
Dow	15799	6047	56	10	49	3
Nikkei	2324	20486	51	1	54	12
AORD	1264	237	53	1	48	0

For all the markets tested, this second naive system produces positive results especially for the Nikkei and CAC trading short and the Dow trading long. These results demonstrate that markets have a tendency to reverse direction each day, they move up one day then down the next. This behaviour is also observed in trending markets, and market “pull-backs” are a well-known phenomena.

### 4.2.3 Summary of Naive Baseline Systems

Of the two naive systems tested, the “reversing” methodology produces the best results in terms of profit and loss by quite a margin. Thus the results from the “Naive Reversing System” will be used to compare the performance of technical indicators being tested in the following sections.

## 4.3 Trend Detection Indicators

`<sec:trend>`

One of the most widely used phrases in financial trading is “the trend is your friend”. Thus, most market participants are interested in identifying the start of trends, their direction and strength. In this section a variety of technical indicators that purport to assist in this important task are tested.

### 4.3.1 Simple Moving Average (SMA) System

`<sec:Chp4a:sma>`

One of the most popular and widely utilised technical indicators is the simple moving average (as detailed in Chapter 2 section 2.2.1.1). The effectiveness of SMA as an aid to predicting future market movements has been widely debated, with views mixed. A system based on simple moving averages is presented here, and the R code used to generate the results can be seen in Appendix A section A.1.3.1. The algorithm trades

daily, opening and closing a trade each day. If the market opens above the SMA the algorithm trades long and trades short when the market opens below the SMA.

Table 4.5 lists the results from passing a variety of national index data sets (see Chapter 3 for details) to the algorithm. For each indice the algorithm is run with values of 5, 25, 50, 100 and 200 for the SMA period. In general the results are poor, especially after consideration is given to any transaction costs. The CAC and Nikkei produce negative results for long trades, the FTSE negative results across the board, and the Dow negative returns on the short side.

TABLE 4.5: Results from a system based on SMA.

(tab:sma\_results)

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL	SMA
Dax	2113	3278	54	1	50	2	0
Dax	1367	3427	54	1	50	2	0
Dax	779	3447	54	0	51	3	0
Dax	714	2339	54	0	51	2	0
Dax	3401	4416	55	2	52	4	0
CAC	-3952	2338	49	-2	49	1	0
CAC	-5058	1615	49	-2	49	1	0
CAC	-5323	1029	49	-3	49	1	0
CAC	-2363	3188	50	-1	50	2	0
CAC	-1219	3923	50	-1	50	3	0
FTSE	-4724	-5331	49	-2	46	-3	0
FTSE	-1013	-1940	51	0	47	-1	0
FTSE	-2226	-2769	50	-1	47	-2	0
FTSE	-889	-1692	51	0	48	-1	0
FTSE	-158	-835	52	0	49	-1	0
Dow	408	-9630	52	0	46	-6	0
Dow	1138	-9204	53	1	46	-7	0
Dow	5478	-5876	53	3	47	-4	0
Dow	2576	-8220	53	1	47	-6	0
Dow	6378	-4567	54	3	48	-4	0
Nikkei	3078	20401	51	2	54	13	0
Nikkei	-7878	10770	48	-4	52	7	0
Nikkei	-6054	11408	49	-4	52	7	0
Nikkei	-6235	8381	49	-4	52	5	0
Nikkei	-5928	6836	49	-4	52	4	0
AORD	5009	3929	55	3	51	3	0
AORD	3701	2674	54	2	50	2	0
AORD	2804	1864	54	1	50	1	0
AORD	2688	1521	54	1	50	1	0
AORD	2574	1616	54	1	51	2	0

One aspect of a trading system of this nature worth considering is the risk / reward profile. As written in its current form the SMA algorithm has an unlimited profit potential (trades are left to run until the end of the day) and an unlimited potential loss

for the same reason. Often traders employ what is known as a “stop loss”. This is a level in the market that if reached during a trade will cause the trade to close. The risk is now therefore reduced to this value while the profit is still potentially uncapped. Table 4.6 lists the results of using a stop loss with the SMA system.

The logic of the stop loss was coded as follows. Considering a long trade (the opposite holds true for trading short), where there is an expectation that the market to rise, a the stop loss would be triggered if the market fell to a certain level. Thus in the algorithm for a long trade the distance from the opening price to the low is calculated and this is compared to the stop loss value. If the open to low value exceeds the stop loss value the PL for this particular trade is set at the stop loss value, for example a loss of 100 points. One point of note is the fact that after hitting this low level the market may well recover and move upwards as originally expected. In many cases a trade that ultimately would have been profitable may be “stopped out” by the natural wax and wane of the markets. Therefore the impact of a stop loss is the balance between lost good trades and the reduction in the lost PL from losing trades. The size of the stop loss determines the impact of the two competing situations.

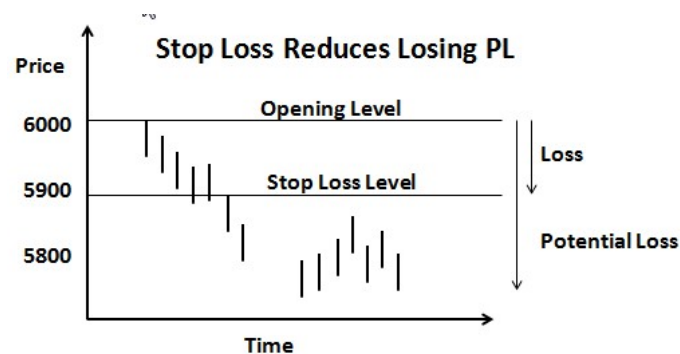


FIGURE 4.1: Situation in which using a stop loss is beneficial, with a losing PL being reduced.

<fig:chp5:sloss1>



FIGURE 4.2: Situation in which using a stop loss is detrimental, being “stopped out” of an ultimately winning trade.

<fig:chp5:sloss2>

Figure 4.1 shows the situation in which a stop loss is beneficial. The potential large loss is reduced to the value of the stop loss value. Figure 4.2 illustrates the alternative scenario of being “Stopped Out” of an ultimately winning trade, an undesirable outcome. It is the ratio of these scenarios that ultimately determines whether using a stop loss is a sound strategy.

TABLE 4.6: Results from a system based on SMA with stop loss.

(tab:sma_results_Sloss)	Mkt	S Loss	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	L Trades	S Win %	S Trades	SMA
	Dax	-50	3652	6618	51	2070	42	1360	0
	Dax	-100	1392	5272	54	2070	50	1360	0
	CAC	-50	-172	5178	50	2012	47	1475	0
	CAC	-100	-1822	4658	50	2012	50	1475	0
	FTSE	-50	1114	6303	50	2044	43	1389	0
	FTSE	-100	-885	1892	51	2044	47	1389	0
	Dow	-50	-18212	-8229	32	2125	22	1297	0
	Dow	-100	-11771	-14696	49	2125	36	1297	0
	Nikkei	-50	8258	33882	38	1643	39	1696	0
	Nikkei	-100	2550	25582	47	1643	48	1696	0
	AORD	-50	4008	3730	54	2230	49	1219	0
	AORD	-100	2881	2149	54	2230	50	1219	0

Comparing Tables 4.5 and 4.6 it can be seen that applying the stop loss has been on the whole beneficial to the results obtained, with the exception of those from the Dow which were markedly negatively impacted. Essentially losing trades have been truncated while winning trades have been left to develop. One question that needs to be addressed is what value is appropriate for a stop loss. If the value is large the benefits of cutting losses is lost, whereas if it is too small a large number of trades will be “stopped out”. Many traders use a value based on the Average True Range (see Chapter 3 section 3.3.1 for details) as this allows for the volatility of a particular market.

### 4.3.2 Moving Average Convergence/Divergence (MACD)

Moving Average Convergence/Divergence (MACD) is a trend following indicator, developed by Appel (2005), that is formed from the relationship of two moving averages, see Appendix B section B.1 for more details. The value of MACD itself is the difference between two exponential moving averages (EMA), a “slower” e.g. 26 day value and a “faster” e.g. 12 day value. In addition an EMA of the MACD value is calculated, which is set to 9 days in the following algorithm, which acts as a “signal” line.

The MACD is generally used two ways. Firstly, it can be used to derive the general trend of the security so that the market participant can trade with the trend. Secondly,

it can be employed to identify periods when the market is “over-bought” or “over-sold” and can be expected to reverse direction ([Achelis, 2014](#)).

In order to identify the trend of a market using the MACD indicator, the relative values of the MACD itself and the signal line are used. If the value of the MACD exceeds the signal it is considered “bullish” and the market is expected to rise in price. Similarly in the opposite situation where the value of the signal is greater than the MACD the trend of the market is expected to be down.

Table 4.7 lists the results of using the MACD indicator in just such a way. The MACD value itself is generated using the EMA of the opening prices with values of 26 and 12 for the slow and long averages and a value of 9 days for the indicator line.

The trading algorithm splits the results into two values, days when the system expected the market to rise and days when a market decline were predicted (see Appendix A section A.1.3.2 for details of the R code used). At the start of each day if the MACD value exceeds the signal line the algorithm adds the value of the close price minus the opening price to the “Long PL” running total. Likewise in the opposite situation with the signal line greater than the MACD, the value of the open price minus the close price is added to the “Short PL”. Table 4.7 lists the results of the algorithm run against a variety of national indices.

TABLE 4.7: Results from a system using MACD as a trend indicator.

(tab:mac\_trend\_results)

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	-791	1424	53	0	48	1
CAC	-4153	2188	49	-2	49	1
FTSE	63	-839	51	0	48	0
Dow	5592	-5190	53	3	46	-3
Nikkei	-4078	14064	49	-2	52	8
AORD	2563	1569	54	1	49	1

### 4.3.3 Aroon Indicator

Developed by Tushar Chande, the Aroon indicator was designed to identify trending markets ([Chande and Kroll, 1994](#)). The word aroon means “dawn’s early light” in Sanskrit and this indicator tries to pin point the dawning of a new trend. Essentially it is a measure of the time since the occurrence of a high/low price in a particular period. Further details can be seen in Appendix B section B.2.

Table 4.8 shows the results of applying the Aroon algorithm (shown in Appendix A section A.1.3.3) on the data of the national indices. The results are promising with the

TABLE 4.8: Results from a system based on the Aroon indicator.

&lt;tab:aroon\_results&gt;

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	5308	5257	56	3	51	4
CAC	-1638	4919	50	-1	52	4
FTSE	3042	5715	52	2	51	5
Dow	12131	3811	55	7	49	3
Nikkei	-4852	12013	49	-3	52	10
AORD	3735	3540	55	2	50	3

indicator making positive predictions in most of the markets and doing particularly well in declining markets.

TABLE 4.9: Results from a system based on the Aroon indicator with stop loss.

&lt;tab:aroon\_results\_sloss&gt;

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	5410	7465	56	3	50	6
CAC	-1224	6086	50	-1	52	5
FTSE	3091	8015	52	2	51	7
Dow	-5922	-9341	49	-3	37	-8
Nikkei	3153	22177	46	2	47	18
AORD	3786	4159	55	2	50	4

The affects of using a stop loss with the Aroon indicator was investigated and the results shown in Table 4.9. The use of a stop loss was beneficial in all cases except the Dow, in which case it had a catastrophic impact turning a winning system into a losing one. The impact of the stop loss is shown in Table 4.10 which lists the difference in PL between the original results without a stop loss and the revised ones with it.

TABLE 4.10: Impact of using stop loss with Aroon trend indicator.

&lt;tab:aroon\_results\_sloss\_diff&gt;

Market	Long Difference	Short Difference
Dax	102	2208
CAC	414	1167
FTSE	49	2300
Dow	-18053	-13152
Nikkei	8005	10164
AORD	51	619

## 4.4 Market Reversal Indicators

The alternative to trend detection indicators are market reversal indicators, designed to identify when a trend may be ending and the market will start to move in the opposite direction. Many traders advocate that this type of trading should be avoided and cite

the old phrase “never try to catch a falling knife”. Nevertheless a variety of market reversal technical indicators are explored and their effectiveness noted.

#### 4.4.1 Parabolic Stop-and-Reverse (SAR)

The parabolic stop-and-reverse (SAR) is a method to calculate a trailing stop. This technical indicator was developed by J. Welles Wilder and is detailed in his book *New Concepts in Technical Trading Systems* (Wilder, 1978). A trailing stop is related to the stop loss explored previously but differs in that it is adjusted as the market moves. The level of this of kind of stop loss is amended periodically such that it is a certain amount away from the high or low value of a market. As the the market makes new highs it is adjusted up or down if the market makes new lows. The parabolic SAR calculates the point at which a long trade would be closed and a short position entered, the assumption being that the market participant is always in the market either short or long. More details on the theory and calculations to generate the parabolic SAR can be found in Appendix B section B.3.

Table 4.11 lists the results from passing a variety of national index data sets to an algorithm using the parabolic SAR. The R code used to generate these results can be seen in See Appendix A section A.1.4.1. On the whole the results from these initial tests are very disappointing. Only three of the national indices generated positive results and only the Japanese Nikkei provided reasonable returns.

TABLE 4.11: Results from a system based on the SAR indicator.

`<tab:sar_results>`

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	-3856	-2353	53	-2	48	-2
CAC	-5584	1034	49	-3	49	1
FTSE	-1141	-1663	51	-1	48	-1
Dow	-1301	-11112	52	-1	46	-7
Nikkei	-5767	12424	49	-3	52	8
AORD	2071	1097	53	1	49	1

#### 4.4.2 MACD as reversal Indicator

MACD can also be used as a reversal indicator. Recalling that the MACD is formed from the relationship of two moving averages, when the faster one moves sharply away from the slower one (i.e.the value of MACD rises) this could be an indication of an “overbought” market and that a reversal is approaching. In this situation the trader would place a sell trade. The opposite is true for a large negative MACD, and it is postulated that the market may well reverse upwards.



Table 4.12 shows the results of applying the algorithm shown in Appendix A section A.1.4.2 on the data of the national indices. In the algorithm the 15% and 85% quantile of the MACD value is calculated and this is used to decide on the reversal point. Once the 85% value is exceeded the algorithm predicts a reversal will occur and trades short, the opposite is true for the 15% level which triggers a long trade. Overall the results are very modest, with small positive gains being seen in 5 of the 6 national indices.

TABLE 4.12: Results from a trading system based on MACD being used as a trend reversal indicator.

<tab:mac\_ob\_results>

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	391	407	49	1	48	1
CAC	-545	2657	51	-1	55	5
FTSE	2080	1649	53	4	53	3
Dow	3882	-807	52	7	48	-2
Nikkei	199	2828	51	0	52	6
AORD	-319	-584	50	-1	49	-1

## 4.5 Momentum Indicators

Momentum indicators are closely related to the trend indicators introduced in section 4.3. They are concerned with trending markets but differ in that the strength of the trend is also included in the information the indicator attempts to portray.

### 4.5.1 Stochastic Oscillator

The stochastic indicator is one of the oldest in widespread use today having been developed by George Lane in the 1950s (Lane, 1986). It measures the relative position of a market's closing price in the range between the low and high of the period of interest. This is of interest as some market participants believe that financial markets essentially swing between price boundaries marked by where the market closes in this range (Williams, 2011). Thus markets increase until the close is at the top of this range before changing direction and moving down until it is at the bottom of the high low range.

The stochastic is usually represented by two lines %K which is the position of the price within this high low envelope described above, and %D a moving average of %K (see Appendix B section B.4 for more details). It can be used a number of ways and one popular technique is to go long when the %K crosses above %D and to go short in the opposite situation. Table 4.13 lists the results from passing a variety of national index

data sets to an algorithm which uses the relative position of %K and %D to decide which way to trade. The R code used to generate these results can be seen in See Appendix A section A.1.4.3.

TABLE 4.13: Results from a system based on the Stochastic indicator.

&lt;tab:stoch\_results&gt;

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	-28	1673	53	0	49	1
CAC	-4540	1817	48	-3	48	1
FTSE	-73	-744	51	0	48	0
Dow	867	-9414	53	0	46	-5
Nikkei	-10591	7802	48	-6	51	5
AORD	2839	1780	54	2	49	1

The results from Table 4.13 for this system are very modest with only the Australian ORD showing positive values for both long and short trades. Adding a stop loss of 100 points increases the PL across the board except for the case of the Dow where again the stop loss has had a detrimental affect. The results from using a stochastic based system with a stop loss can be seen in Table 4.14.

TABLE 4.14: Results from a system based on the Stochastic indicator with a stop loss.

&lt;tab:stoch\_results\_sloss&gt;

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	1173	3889	52	1	48	2
CAC	-3493	2730	48	-2	48	2
FTSE	1640	1424	51	1	48	1
Dow	-13969	-27388	45	-8	37	-16
Nikkei	1647	17977	45	1	46	10
AORD	3028	1974	54	2	49	1

#### 4.5.2 Rate of Change (ROC)

The Rate of Change (ROC) indicator is a simple and widely observed technical indicator. It is the difference between the current price and the price several observations ago. See Appendix B section B.5 for details. If this value is large, either positive or negative it is indicative of a strongly trending market with a lot of momentum either upwards or downwards. The R code for a trading system exploiting these ideas can be seen in Appendix A section A.1.4.4. The results can be seen in Table 4.15 which lists the results from passing a variety of national index data sets to the algorithm.

TABLE 4.15: Results from a system based on the ROC indicator.

&lt;tab:mac\_roc\_results&gt;

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	1026	180	50	2	50	0
CAC	952	956	53	2	51	2
FTSE	1147	1880	51	2	51	4
Dow	8517	3396	58	16	49	6
Nikkei	2971	2546	50	6	52	5
AORD	271	1325	51	1	52	2

## 4.6 Break-out systems

&lt;sec:bout&gt;

This section explores some trading systems that use a particular price as the indicator to place a trade. The first system uses the simple idea of trading when the previous day's high or low is passed. The second idea is related to the results generated in Chapter 3, where the 90% quantile for the day's minor move was calculated. The system tested here is to simply trade long or short when this point is reached in a day.

### 4.6.1 Daily High / Low Breakout System

&lt;sec:chp5:bout\_sys&gt;

Table 4.16 lists the results from a trading system based around the idea of trading after the previous day's high or low price has been breached. The R code used to generate these results can be seen in See Appendix A section A.1.5.1.

TABLE 4.16: Results from the Daily High / Low Breakout System.

&lt;tab:h1\_bout\_sys&gt;

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	21073	21229	58	11	56	13
CAC	14252	20176	58	8	59	12
FTSE	13239	18614	59	7	59	12
Dow	-19355	-27334	42	-11	38	-17
Nikkei	74600	81645	64	44	64	49
AORD	19347	21244	67	11	65	14

Referring to Table 4.16 we can see that this system produces good results, with the exception of the US Dow. This ties in with the data in Chapter 3 Table 3.6 which shows that the Dow only closes outside of the previous low or high price a relatively low number of times. Likewise good results are seen with the Japanese Nikkei from the breakout system and this tallies with the high proportion of the time in which it closes above or below the previous day's high or low.

### 4.6.2 Break Out of 90% Quantile Level

A second system utilising the break-out concept is presented in this section. In Chapter 3 one characteristic of the markets was noted, namely that each day the market moves from its opening price to a low price and then to a high price (not necessarily in any particular order). One of these moves (O-H vs O-L) is greater than the other was termed the major move and the smaller move was called the minor move. The algorithm generating the results in this section (see Appendix A section A.1.5.2) makes a long or short trade after the market has passed the 90% quantile of the minor move. Table 4.17 lists the results from this algorithm.

TABLE 4.17: Results from a system that breaks out from the 90% quantile level of the day's minor move.

(tab:q\_90\_results)

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	7841	6371	56	6	53	4
CAC	2647	5085	54	2	52	3
FTSE	10758	15295	56	7	54	10
Dow	-30262	-34854	39	-24	37	-28
Nikkei	23606	31830	58	16	56	20
AORD	16730	19357	63	9	62	12

## 4.7 Candlestick Patterns

As previously noted in Chapter 2 section 2.1.5 candlestick patterns are visual representations of price movements over the course of a particular time period (often a day) in terms of the market's opening, closing, high and low prices. The pattern generated from these price markets are categorised and named depending upon the visual shape they produce. Thus candlestick patterns represent the counter forces of buyers and sellers throughout the trading period. This section analyses some well known candlestick patterns for predictive power in making trading decisions.

### 4.7.1 Hanging Man, Hammer, Inverted Hanging Man and Shooting Star

Four well-known patterns that are generally considered to indicate the possible end of a trend and the start of a reversal are the so-called Hanging Man, Hammer, Inverted Hanging Man and Shooting Star candlestick patterns.

Figure 4.3 is a diagram of a Hammer and Inverted Hammer patterns. Both patterns have a small "body" (the distance between the open and close prices) and a long "shadow"

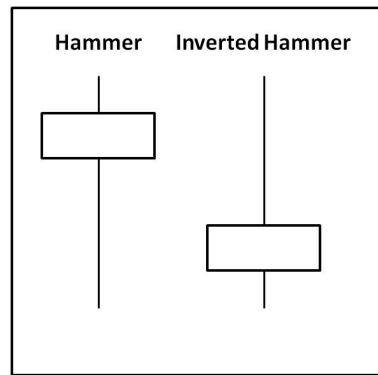


FIGURE 4.3: Hammer and Inverted Hammer candlestick patterns.

<fig:chp5e:hammer>

(the distance between the high and low prices). In the diagrams presented here a white candlestick means the market price increased over the course of the day while a black one means the market fell. The body of the candlestick is white in this case, indicating that the market moved up (the closing price was above the opening price), although by only a small amount. Hammer and Inverted Hammer differ in that the long shadow in hammer is generated from a low price whereas the shadow of Inverted Hammer goes upwards as it is indicative of the period's high price.

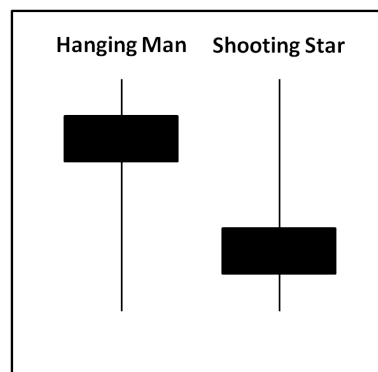


FIGURE 4.4: Hanging Man and Shooting Star candlestick patterns.

<fig:chp5e:shoot\_star>

Figure 4.4 is a diagram of Hanging Man and Shooting Star, these being the opposite to Hammer and Inverted Hammer. In this case the market direction is down, albeit only by a small amount, and thus the body of the candlestick is a different colour, in this case black. Again both patterns have long shadows, the direction of which determines if the pattern is Hanging Man or Shooting Star.

Both sets of patterns Hammer/Inverted Hammer and Hanging Man/Shooting Star are considered to indicate that a trend is coming to a close and a reversal could be looming. In the case of Hammer/Inverted Hammer if they are encountered during a down trend they could indicate that the selling pressure is easing and a market move to the upside could happen soon. The opposite is true for Hanging Man/Shooting Star. When these are encountered in an up trend they often indicate that the trend is ending and a reversal



FIGURE 4.5: Daily candlestick patterns from the German Dax over 22 days in April 2014 with Shooting Star and Hanging Man circled.

g:chp5e:shoot\_star\_dax)

may occur. Figure 4.5 shows daily candlestick patterns for the German Dax over 22 days in April 2014. A Shooting Star is circled on the 6th April and a Hanging Man on the 23rd April. In each case they occur while the market is rising and in each case it reverses immediately afterwards.

In order to have a system based on candlestick patterns, the pattern itself must be identified in code. A Hammer and Hanging Man are essentially the same pattern except Hammer has a close higher than the open whereas Hanging Man represents a decline in the price. For these patterns three components are defined, the length of the upper shadow (short), the size of the body (short) and the length of the lower shadow. In the trading system that follows these were defined as:

1. Upper Shadow - the value of the day's high minus the high of the body is less than 10% the total High-Low range.
2. Body - is larger than 10% the total High-Low range.
3. Lower Shadow - the value of the day's low minus the low of the body is greater than 66% of the High-Low range.

Analysing the Dax data set running from 2000 to 2013 with 3570 observations, and using the criteria described above 35 Hammer and 48 Hanging Man patterns can be detected.

Inverted Hammer and Shooting Star are again the same pattern except in Inverted Hammer the price rose. In the later system these are defined as:

1. Upper Shadow - the value of the day's high minus the high of the body is at least 66% the total High-Low range.

2. Body - is larger than 10% the total High-Low range.
3. Lower Shadow - the value of the day's low minus the low of the body is less than 10% of the High-Low range.

Considering the Dax data set again, occurrences of these patterns are quite rare with 30 Inverted Hammers and 17 Shooting Stars in 3570 observations.

Results from a trading system based on the Hammer / Inverted Hammer can be seen in Table 4.18 and the R code in Appendix A section A.1.6.1. The algorithm simply places a buy the day after a Hammer or Inverted Hammer occur, the assumption being that these patterns indicate that the market is about to rise.

TABLE 4.18: Results from a system based on the Hammer and Inverted Hammer candlestick patterns.

`<tab:hammer_results>`

Mkt	LongPL	L Win %	L Trades	Av L PL
Dax	594	53	126	5
CAC	-793	44	149	-5
FTSE	834	58	188	4
Dow	2097	59	88	24
Nikkei	-2202	48	147	-15
AORD	-809	46	236	-3

An alternative approach is to look for Hammer and Inverted Hammer patterns occurring in a down trend, in which case it could signal the end of the down trend and the start of a reversal. Table 4.19 shows the results of using the Hammer and Inverted Hammer to predict a price rise during a down trend. An aroon down value of greater than 65 (with a 20 day look back period) is used to define the down trend. The algorithm can be seen in Appendix A section A.1.6.2.

TABLE 4.19: Results from a system based on the Hammer and Inverted Hammer candlestick patterns occurring in a downtrend as defined by the aroon value.

`b:hammer_aroon_results>`

Mkt	LongPL	L Win %	L Trades	Av L PL
Dax	-187	42	36	-5
CAC	-515	44	55	-9
FTSE	281	55	65	4
Dow	730	55	22	33
Nikkei	-934	48	58	-16
AORD	-614	41	77	-8

### 4.7.2 Engulfing Candlestick

`<sec:eng_cand>`

The “Engulfing” pattern, either Bull or Bear is another widely considered candlestick pattern and is depicted in Figure 4.6. This pattern has a lower low and a higher high than the preceding candlestick and is usually interpreted as indicating a change in direction of the trend. Engulfing candlesticks can be either bullish, where the closing price is above the opening price or bearish when the market moves down.

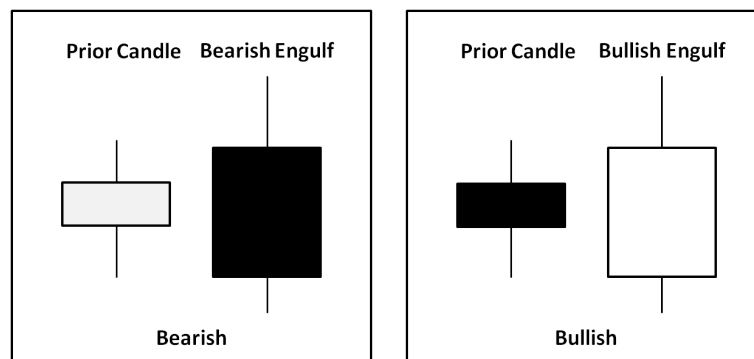


FIGURE 4.6: Engulfing candlestick patterns.

`<fig:chp5e:engulf>`

Table 4.20 lists the results from passing a variety of national index data sets (see Appendix A section A.1.6.3 for details) to an algorithm that buys or sells the market depending on the presence of an Engulfing pattern.

TABLE 4.20: Results from a system based on the Engulfing candlestick pattern.

`<tab:engulf_results>`

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	-920	-258	44	-7	46	-2
CAC	-319	228	45	-2	50	1
FTSE	-1721	1185	51	-4	50	3
Dow	-770	-3662	48	-4	35	-28
Nikkei	-3823	-1166	37	-39	44	-11
AORD	-6	-600	53	0	46	-3

Table 4.21 lists the results from extending the algorithm such that trades are only taken in either up or down trends, as defined by the aroon indicator. The R code for the amended algorithm can be see Appendix A section A.1.6.4.

### 4.7.3 Doji

Doji is a well-known candlestick pattern that can appear on its own or as a component of a pattern. A Doji forms when the open and close price are similar and there is an upper and lower shadow, thus they often resemble a cross. Variations within Doji include the Dragonfly and Gravestone Doji, see Figure 4.7. In an up trend Doji (especially



TABLE 4.21: Results from a system based on the Engulfing candlestick pattern in a trending market.

b:engulf\_aroon\_results&gt;

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	-874	-513	38	-20	43	-7
CAC	-118	-666	49	-3	30	-11
FTSE	-1217	-782	47	-8	48	-3
Dow	202	-1154	45	4	44	-11
Nikkei	-1522	-1733	38	-59	37	-32
AORD	-49	-27	53	-1	50	0

Gravestone) can indicate a reversal could occur and likewise in a down trend a Dragonfly could suggest an upward move is about to start.

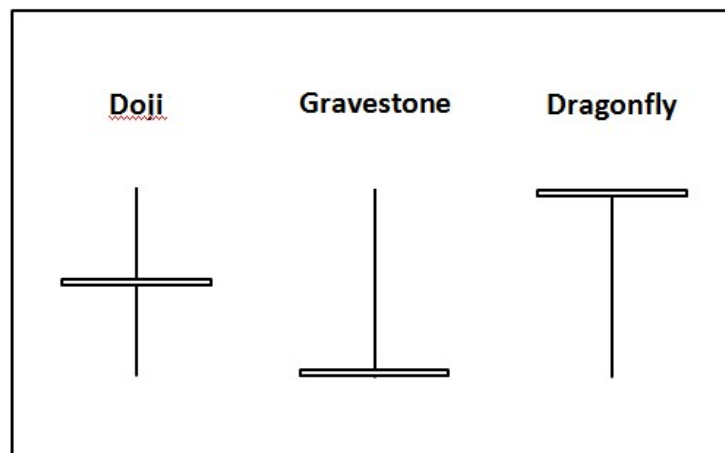


FIGURE 4.7: Doji candlestick patterns.

&lt;fig:chp5e:doji&gt;

Table 4.22 lists the results from passing a variety of national index data sets (see Appendix A section A.1.6.5 for details) to an algorithm that buys or sells the market depending on the presence of a Doji. In an up trend, as identified by the aroon indicator, a Doji or Gravestone is used to initiate a sell and conversely in down trend a Doji or Dragonfly is used as a signal to buy.

TABLE 4.22: Results from a system based on the Doji candlestick pattern in a trending market.

tab:doji\_aroon\_results&gt;

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	-826	-1132	53	-8	52	-6
CAC	-747	-326	46	-6	49	-2
FTSE	-697	418	53	-8	52	3
Dow	-763	-2869	51	-5	50	-10
Nikkei	1296	-2944	55	12	45	-22
AORD	-115	195	54	-1	54	2

## Chapter 5

# Time Series

⟨Chapter5⟩

This chapter will explore the use of time series analysis techniques to generate models for forecasting futures prices in various national stock market indices. Usually, in trying to predict the future behaviour of financial markets the direction they will move, either up or down, is of more interest than the actual value itself. Thus in this chapter predictions of the future direction as well as the actual value itself are attempted. Further when considering the general direction of the market it can be represented as a categorical variable, i.e. “up” or “down” or as a variable for example 1 for “up” and 2 for “down”. The choice has implications for which algorithm can be employed in the forecasting technique because of the differing data types. A variety of time series models are developed in this chapter using ARIMA and hybrid ARIMA methods.

### 5.1 ARIMA Models

⟨arima\_models⟩

The use of Auto-Regressive Integrated Moving Average (ARIMA) models, see section [2.2.4](#) for details, was explored in order to forecast future prices for financial markets. The process of fitting an ARIMA model to a time series is quite challenging and involves the following general steps:

1. Plot the data to get a general feel for the time series and to establish if it is stationary.
2. Stabilize any variance in the data with a transformation process such as the Box-Cox method.
3. ARIMA models work with stationary data, so if necessary, take differences of the data until it is stationary.

4. Examine the auto-correlation and partial auto-correlation (ACF/PACF) plots in order to determine if an AR(p) or MA(q) model is appropriate.
5. Test the chosen model(s), using the AICc to determine if a better model is available.
6. Check the residuals from the best model by plotting the ACF, and doing a port-manteau test on them. If the results from these tests do not look like white noise, a modified model may be required.
7. Finally, once the residuals have a similar pattern to white noise, the model can be used to generate forecasts.

In recent years automatic forecasting algorithms have become available and are widely used (Hyndman and Yeasmin, 2008). These are necessary in a variety of circumstances, especially when organisations are faced with the need to repeatedly carry out a large number of forecasts and the human effort required renders manual means impractical. The `auto.arima()` function found in R’s “forecast” package is an example of an automatic algorithm for ARIMA models. This function automates steps 3, 4, and 5 of those outlined previously, in the general steps required for ARIMA modelling. In the following sections, the general steps are used to generate an ARIMA model manually, and then the automatic algorithm is utilised to build one.

## 5.2 Manual Generation ARIMA of Models

`<sec:man_arima>`

### 5.2.1 Data Exploration

The first step, as always is to explore the data. Figure 5.1 shows the UK’s FTSE 100 index between the years 2000 to 2013. Over this time period the series has shown strong trends to move up and down and a uniform variance. Because the time series is non-stationary it will need to be transformed into a stationary series before ARIMA modelling can be undertaken.

### 5.2.2 Adjusting for non-uniform variance and non-stationariness

The variance within the FTSE time series is relatively uniform and thus this data set doesn’t need stabilizing with regard to this. If it did, a Box-Cox transformation could be used. However, over this time period the FTSE 100 exhibits marked non-stationariness and requires adjusting accordingly. One such technique to make a data set stationary is differencing. Instead of using the actual observations the differences between two

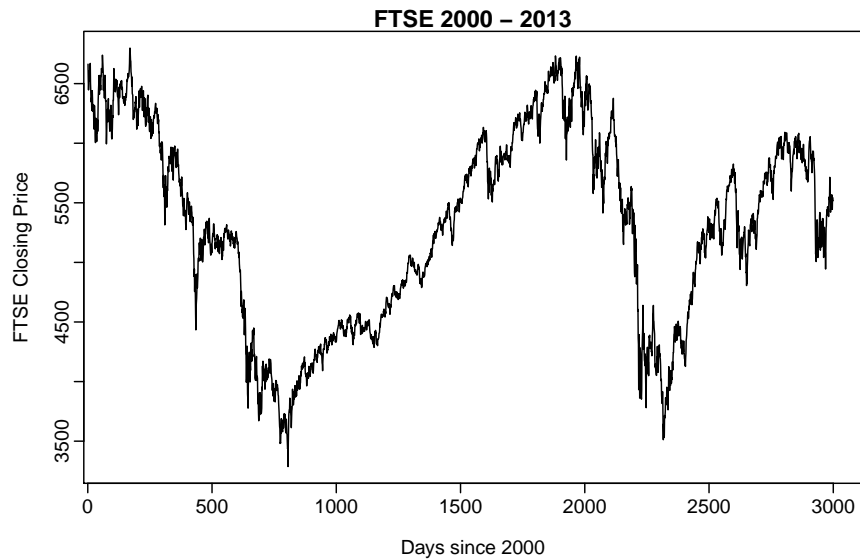


FIGURE 5.1: UK's FTSE 100 index between the years 2000 to 2013.

fig:chp\_ts\_ftse\_2000\_13)

adjacent points are used and this is known as the first difference. If the data set still isn't stationary the difference between consecutive points in the differenced data set can be used, this is the difference of the differences and is known as the second difference. Figure 5.2 shows the FTSE data set after the first differences have been taken. The resulting data set is now stationary.

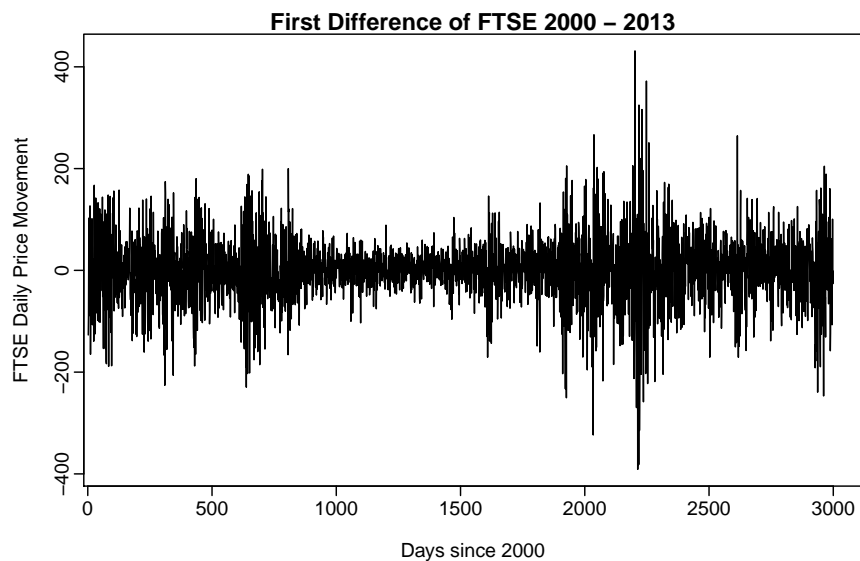


FIGURE 5.2: First difference of FTSE between the years 2000 to 2013.

p\_ts\_ftse\_2000\_13\_diff)

### 5.2.3 Examine ACF / PACF

With a stationary data set, the next stage is to investigate the auto-correlation and partial auto-correlation (ACF/PACF) plots in order to help in the model selection process

(see section 2.2.5 for details of ACF and PACF). The ACF and PACF for the FTSE data set can be seen in Figures 5.3 and 5.4.

If ultimately the ARIMA model is of the form  $\text{ARIMA}(p,d,0)$  or  $\text{ARIMA}(0,d,q)$  then the ACF and PACF plots are useful in helping to define values for  $p$  or  $q$ . In the event that both  $p$  and  $q$  are positive, the ACF and PACF are not helpful in deducing the values for  $p$  and  $q$ . An  $\text{ARIMA}(p,d,0)$  model may be appropriate if the ACF and PACF plots of the stationary data exhibit an exponentially decaying pattern in the ACF and a large spike at lag  $p$  in PACF plot. Conversely an  $\text{ARIMA}(0,d,q)$  model may be appropriate if the PACF is decaying exponentially and there is there is a significant spike in the ACF plot at lag  $q$ . Considering the ACF and PACF plots in Figures 5.3 and 5.4, neither of the two patterns are observed and thus an ARIMA model where both  $p$  and  $q$  are positive is likely.

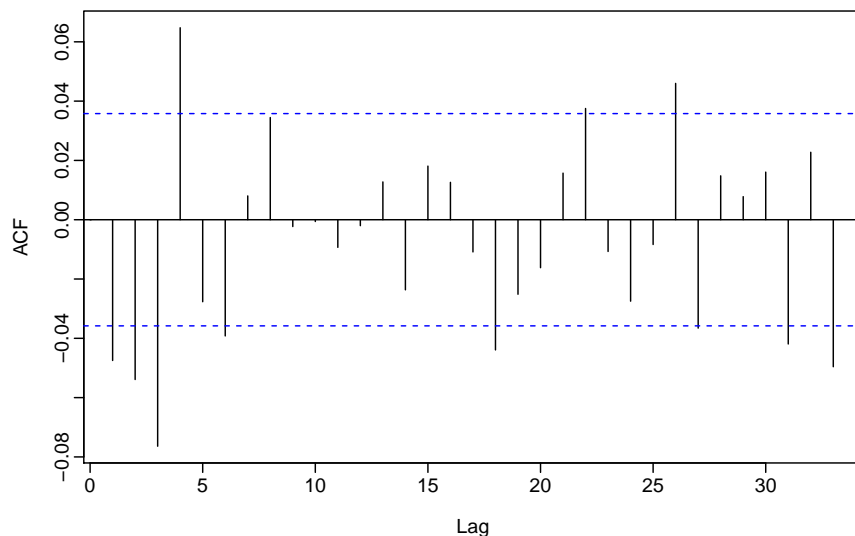


FIGURE 5.3: Auto-correlation plot of differenced data from FTSE 100 between the years 2000 to 2013.

\_ftse\_2000-13\_diff\_acf)

,

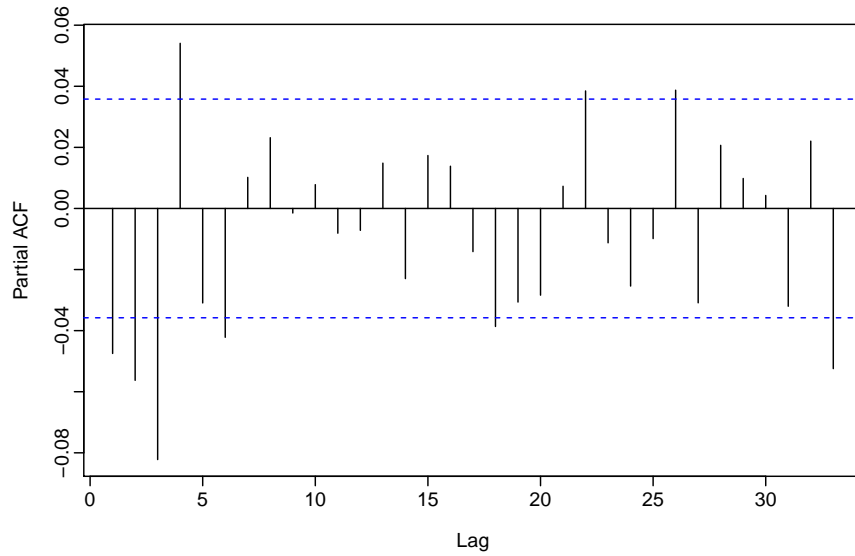


FIGURE 5.4: Partial auto-correlation plot of differenced data from FTSE 100 between the years 2000 to 2013.

ftse\_2000-13\_diff\_pacf)

#### 5.2.4 Try the chosen model(s)

The next step is to try the chosen model along with a few viable alternatives. Akaike's Information Criterion (AIC) and Bayesian Information Criterion (BIC) are useful for determining the optimum order of an ARIMA model, and are typically used as a measure of how well the model fits the data. AIC can be given by:

$$AIC = -2\log(L) + 2(p + q + k + 1)$$

where:

$L$  is the likelihood of the data and  $k = 1$  if  $c \neq 0$  and  $k = 0$  if  $c = 0$ , the last term in parentheses is the number of parameters in the model.

For ARIMA models, the corrected AIC can be written as:

$$AIC_c = AIC + \frac{2(p + q + k + 1)(p + q + k + 2)}{T - p - q - k - 2}$$

The Bayesian Information Criterion can be expressed as:

$$BIC = AIC + \log(T)(p + q + k + 1)$$

Table 5.1 shows the AIC, AICc and BIC accuracy measures for a selection of ARIMA models applied to the FTSE data set. On all three measures the ARIMA(2,1,3) model has the lowest value.

TABLE 5.1: AIC, AICc and BIC results from alternative ARIMA models.

tab:chp\_ts:arima\_res\_r)

Model	AIC	AICc	BIC
Arima(3,1,1)	33598.5	33598.5	33628.5
Arima(3,1,2)	33594.6	33594.6	33630.6
Arima(3,1,3)	33596.1	33596.1	33638.1
Arima(2,1,1)	33616.4	33616.4	33640.4
Arima(2,1,2)	33618.1	33618.1	33648.1
Arima(2,1,3)	33594.1	33594.1	33630.1

### 5.2.5 Model Residuals

A so-called residual is the difference between an observation and its forecast. In forecasting a time series, residuals are calculated from a one-step forecast. A one-step forecast is based on all observations from the start of the series until the previous observation to which the forecast applies to. Thus the number of data points used to calculate the one-step forecast increases as the forecast proceeds through the time series. An alternative is cross-sectional forecasting which uses all the points in the data set except the observation being predicted.

Knowledge of the residuals from the application of a model is important in establishing the validity of the model. There are two essential and two valuable properties that can be established by inspecting the model residuals. A good method of forecasting will produce a model in which the residuals are uncorrelated and have a zero mean. If a forecasting method doesn't comply with these two properties it can be improved upon. Correlation in residuals means that information is present in them that the model has missed and a non-zero mean is evidence of bias in the forecast. Adjusting for bias is straight forward, the mean value observed in the residuals can simply be added to all forecasts. Looking at Figure 5.5 it can be seen that the mean of the residuals is close to zero and this model doesn't have any bias. Figure 5.6 is the plot of the residuals of the ARIMA model applied to the FTSE data set. The lower order lags are all within the confidence boundaries and is indicative of a good model.

Two additional properties of the residuals that are desirable, though not necessary, are constant variance and normal distribution. If these two conditions are met, the calculation of the prediction interval in the forecast step is easier. From Figure 5.5 it can be seen that the residuals have relatively constant variance and from Figure 5.7, a histogram of the residuals, it can be seen that they are normally distributed.

Consideration of the ACF plots provides evidence for auto-correlation. However a more formal approach is to consider auto-correlation values together as a group as opposed to individually. The Box-Ljung portmanteau test is just one such approach and Table 5.2

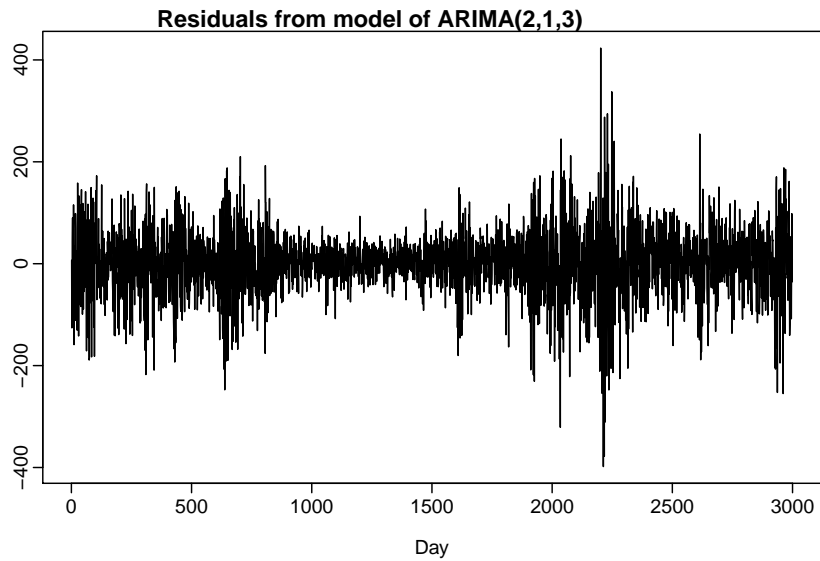


FIGURE 5.5: The residuals after applying the ARIMA(2,1,3) model to the FTSE data set.

\_2000\_13\_mean\_residuals)

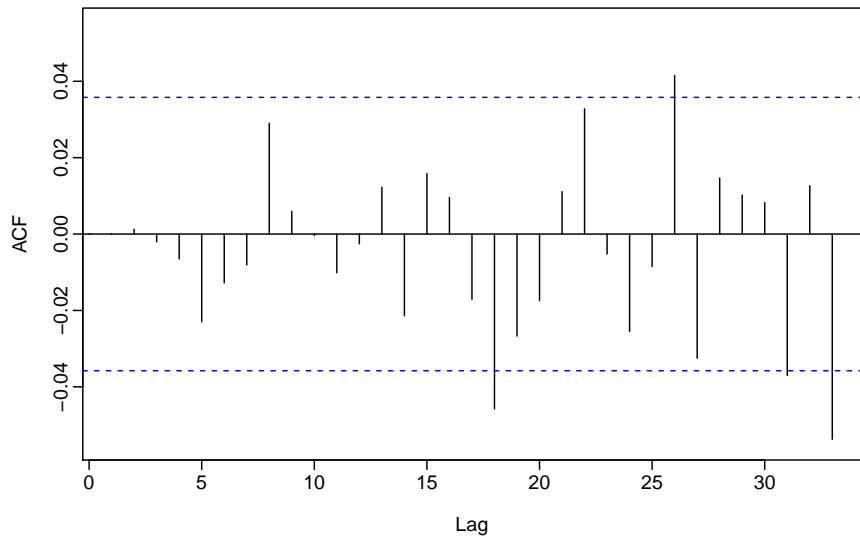


FIGURE 5.6: ACF plot of the residuals after applying the ARIMA(2,1,3) model to the FTSE data set.

\_2000\_13\_acf\_residuals)

lists the results of the Box-Ljung portmanteau test being applied to the residuals of the ARIMA(2,1,3) model. A large p-value is indicative of white noise and is the desirable situation for a good ARIMA model. Taking all the evidence together the ARIMA(2,1,3) model appears a good option for the FTSE data set.

TABLE 5.2: Box Ljung test of FTSE 100 ARIMA model residuals.

hp\_ts:arima\_res\_rbox\_1)

	p-value	x-squared	df
ARIMA(2,1,3)	0.2328	20	24



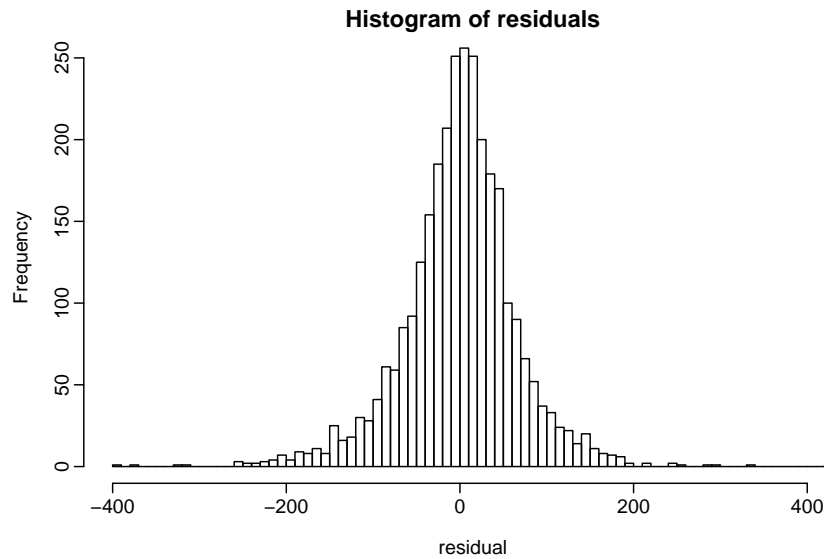


FIGURE 5.7: Histogram of the residuals after applying the ARIMA(2,1,3) model to the FTSE data set.

2000\_13\_hist\_residuals)

### 5.2.6 Calculate forecast

Finally, after developing a model that meets the previous criteria a forecast can be generated. Table 5.3 shows the one-step forecast produced when the ARIMA(2,1,3) model developed in the previous section is applied to the FTSE data set.

TABLE 5.3: One step ahead forecast for FTSE 100 generated from ARIMA(2,1,3) model.

:chp\_ts:ftse\_100\_fcast)

Date	Open	High	Low	Close	Forecast
20/12/2013	6585	6617	6577	6607	6560
23/12/2013	6607	6679	6606	6679	6598
24/12/2013	6679	6712	6672	6694	6666
27/12/2013	6694	6754	6694	6751	6692
30/12/2013	6751	6768	6718	6731	6743
31/12/2013	6731	6757	6731	6749	6730

## 5.3 Automatic Generation of ARIMA Models

As explained previously the automatic ARIMA modelling algorithm in the R forecast package, `auto.arima()`, automates steps 3 to 5 in the general steps used in the modelling process as outlined in section 5.1. The function uses a variation of the Hyndman and Khandakar algorithm which obtains an ARIMA model by the minimisation of the AICc and combination with unit root tests. KPSS tests are used to establish the number of

differences,  $d$ , required to get a stationary time series. The  $p$  and  $q$  values are then obtained by choosing the model that minimises the AICc for the differenced data.

The results of passing the indice data sets to the `auto.arima()` function can be seen in Table 5.4. For the FTSE data set the automatic procedure selects the ARIMA(2,1,3) as being the most appropriate, which matches the conclusion of the work from the manual model selection process described earlier in section 5.2.

TABLE 5.4: Arima models chosen to forecast future values in the national indice data sets.

Market	Arima Model
Dax	ARIMA(3,1,3)
CAC	ARIMA(2,1,3)
FTSE	ARIMA(2,1,3)
Dow	ARIMA(1,1,2)
Nikkei	ARIMA(2,1,3)
AORD	ARIMA(1,1,0)

## 5.4 Trading the ARIMA Models

Having developed forecasts based on ARIMA models these can be passed into a trading system. Two ideas are presented here, in the first the previous closing price is compared against the prediction and if it is lower than the forecast a long trade is entered. This first system will be referred to as System 1. In the second algorithm the current forecast is compared with the previous prediction. When the previous forecast value is lower than the current prediction the system trades long. This algorithm will be referred to as System 2.

### 5.4.1 System 1 - Close Price vs Forecast

Using the ARIMA models listed in Table 5.4 a series of amended data sets were generated by applying the models to the national indice data sets used throughout this study. The amended data sets contained the original Date, Open, High, Low and Close attributes plus a new one called Forecast, in a similar manner to the data seen in Table 5.3. Table 5.5 are results produced from passing the newly generated data sets to the algorithm listed in Appendix A section A.2.1. This system uses the relative position of the close price and the forecast to determine the direction of the trade. If the forecast is higher than the close a long trade is made and when the prediction is lower than the close price a short trade is made.

TABLE 5.5: Forecasts generated by the ARIMA models used in the System 1 algorithm.

`<tab:chp_ts:arima1>`

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	-644	-1881	50	-3	41	-7
CAC	1555	850	59	6	51	3
FTSE	531	-708	53	2	46	-2
Dow	3130	-1766	58	14	48	-6
Nikkei	41	-1157	48	0	45	-5
AORD	679	-204	55	3	49	-1

### 5.4.2 System 2 - Forecast vs Previous Forecast

Table 5.6 lists the results from passing the amended indice data sets with the forecasts generated from the `auto.arima()` function, described in the previous section, to the System 2 algorithm. The R code of this system can be seen in Appendix A section A.2.2. System 2 uses the relative values of the forecasts themselves to decide which direction to trade. If the prediction is higher than the previous day's prediction a long trade is initiated and in the opposite circumstances when the previous forecast is higher than the current forecast a short trade is made.

TABLE 5.6: Forecasts generated by the ARIMA models used in the System 1 algorithm.

`<tab:chp_ts:arima2>`

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	2226	989	57	8	49	4
CAC	-76	-781	50	0	43	-3
FTSE	173	-1066	54	1	47	-4
Dow	2910	-1985	53	10	43	-9
Nikkei	-3269	-4467	50	-14	46	-22
AORD	247	-635	51	1	45	-2

## 5.5 Hybrid ARIMA Models

`<sec:arima:chp5>`

A hybrid ARIMA model is one in which the moving averages of a stationary data set (possibly a non-stationary data set that has been differenced) are combined with data mining learners other than regression. Possible learners include k nearest neighbour algorithms, artificial neural networks and support vector machines. RapidMiner, the open source data mining tool is a powerful solution for building hybrid ARIMA models. Figure 5.8 shows the RapidMiner process used to generate hybrid ARIMA models. The Validation operator in the model below can hold a variety of learners depending upon the task and data types involved. The various components in Figure 5.8 are as follows:

- Read CSV - reads in the appropriate data set.

- Select Attribute (1) - selects the attribute that will be processed in the following steps.
- Rename - renames the attribute selected in Select Attribute (1) to “attr1” which is then used in the rest of the steps. This component is used to make it easy to change the attribute without having to rename all the subsequent steps.
- Moving Average - calculates a moving average of the time series (see section 2.2.1.1 for details.) This provides the q in ARIMA(p,d,q) models.
- Differentiate - calculates the difference in the time series and provides the d in ARIMA(p,d,q) models.
- Lag - creates lag variables which are values of the attribute (the attribute itself, the moving average or the difference value) at earlier points in the time series.
- Select Attribute (2) - selects the attributes that will be passed to the validation block. Attributes regarding today’s values are removed because we are building a model to calculate them and don’t want to “peak” at them before the model is built.
- Set Role - sets an attribute as the label to be predicted.

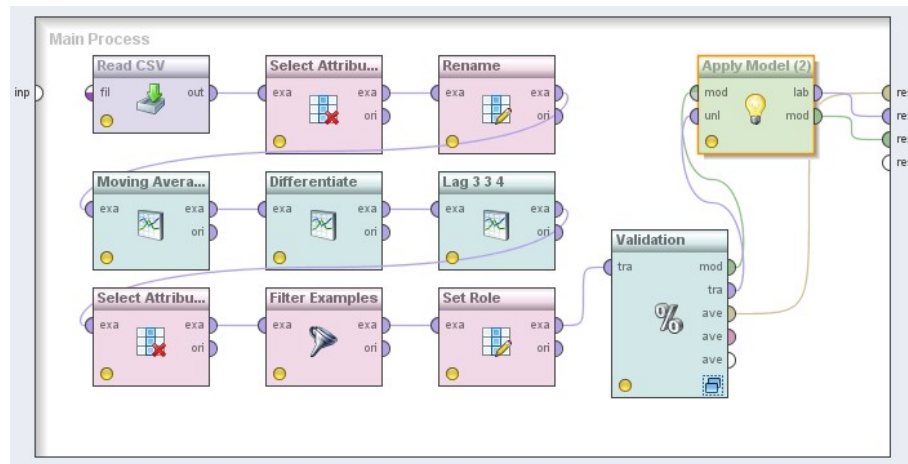


FIGURE 5.8: Rapid Miner hybrid ARIMA process.

<fig:chp\_ts\_rm\_arima>

Figure 5.9 shows the cross-validation operator of the hybrid ARIMA Rapid miner process. This operator can hold alternative learners other than the standard regression operator found in ARIMA models. In the diagram there is an Artificial Neural Network (ANN) operator shown, other options include k-Nearest Neighbour (k-NN) and Support Vector Machine (SVM) operators.

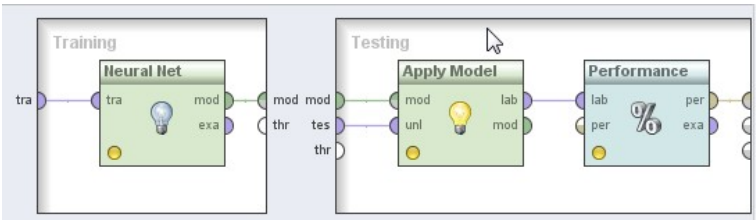


FIGURE 5.9: Rapid Miner cross-validation operator within hybrid ARIMA process.

ts\_rm\_arima\_validation>

## 5.6 Predicting Closing Price

As mentioned previously ARIMA and hybrid ARIMA models were used to predict either the value of the one-step ahead close price or the binary value of whether the market moved up or down. In this section the ability of hybrid ARIMA models to forecast the future price of financial markets (as opposed to the general direction up or down) is explored.

### 5.6.1 ARIMA/Artificial Neural Networks (ANN)

An ARIMA/ANN method was used to generate predictions for the closing price of the indice data sets under study. For each data set applying the hybrid model produces a new one-step forecast attribute which can be used in the System 1 and 2 algorithms previously introduced in section 5.4. Table 5.7 are the results generated by passing the output of the ARIMA/ANN models to trading System 1 (which compares the previous closing price with the current forecast).

hp\_ts:arima\_hybrid\_reg>

TABLE 5.7: Results from passing closing price predictions from hybrid ARIMA/ANN model to System 1.

:chp\_ts:arima\_ann\_sys1>

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	-1305	325	52	0	100	325
CAC	-1018	5295	51	0	52	5
FTSE	1987	1408	58	32	49	0
Dow	11685	1904	53	4	48	4
Nikkei	373	18365	46	4	51	6
AORD	2171	1151	53	3	48	0

Table 5.8 are the results of passing the output of the ARIMA/ANN models to trading System 2, which compares the value of the current forecast with the previous one.

TABLE 5.8: Results from passing closing price predictions from hybrid ARIMA/ANN model to System 2.

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	193	1823	52	0	47	1
CAC	-5544	769	48	-3	48	0
FTSE	-3565	-4144	50	-2	47	-2
Dow	-3417	-13198	51	-2	44	-8
Nikkei	-18852	-861	47	-11	50	-1
AORD	-101	-1121	52	0	47	-1

### 5.6.2 ARIMA/k-Nearest Neighbour (k-NN)

An ARIMA/k-NN method was used to generate predictions for the closing price of the indice data sets. Table 5.9 shows the results of passing data sets containing forecasts generated with hybrid ARIMA/k-NN to trading System 1.

TABLE 5.9: Results from passing closing price predictions from hybrid ARIMA/k-NN model to System 1.

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	8270	9900	56	4	52	6
CAC	6284	12597	54	3	55	7
FTSE	17605	17026	58	9	56	10
Dow	30330	20549	59	17	53	12
Nikkei	15374	33366	54	9	57	20
AORD	7658	6638	57	4	53	4

Table 5.10 shows the results of passing data sets containing forecasts generated with hybrid ARIMA/k-NN to trading System 2.

TABLE 5.10: Results from passing closing price predictions from hybrid ARIMA/k-NN model to System 2.

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	6131	7750	54	3	50	5
CAC	-567	5746	50	0	50	3
FTSE	2571	1992	52	1	49	1
Dow	8466	-1269	54	4	48	-1
Nikkei	-5066	12577	49	-3	52	8
AORD	3153	2013	54	2	50	1

## 5.7 Predicting Up or Down - Categorical Label

In this section the ability of hybrid ARIMA models to forecast whether a financial market will rise or fall is investigated. A categorical attribute taking values “U” and “D”, representing whether the market moved up (“U”) or down (“D”) was introduced into the indice data sets depending upon which way the market moved that day. Hybrid ARIMA models were used to forecast this categorical label.

### 5.7.1 ARIMA/Artificial Neural Networks (ANN)

The R code for a trading system using the forecasts from a hybrid model can be seen in Appendix A section A.2.3. The algorithm simply uses the prediction from the hybrid ARIMA model (“U” or “D”) to decide whether to trade long or short. Table 5.11 lists the results from using this hybrid ARIMA/ANN model to make the forecasts.

TABLE 5.11: Results from a trading system using the forecast of categorical label “U/D” from hybrid ARIMA/ANN model.

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	49	1714	56	2	48	0
CAC	0	6426	NaN	NaN	50	2
FTSE	7399	6806	55	5	51	3
Dow	12434	2711	56	8	49	1
Nikkei	-14054	3771	49	-4	56	24
AORD	3938	2978	53	1	59	13

### 5.7.2 ARIMA/k-Nearest Neighbour (k-NN)

An Arima/k-NN model was also employed in an attempt to predict the categorical label indicating whether the financial markets would move up or down. The forecasts produced from these hybrid models were also applied to the trading algorithms listed in A section A.2.3. Table 5.12 lists the results from this combination.

As the results from Table 5.12 were good, the algorithm was re-run but this time a stop loss was introduced. A stop loss of 100 points was applied to all the markets and the amended results can be seen in Table 5.13. In a similar manner as encountered previously, the use of the stop loss was beneficial for all the markets except the Dow in which case it had a large detrimental affect.

TABLE 5.12: Results from a trading system using the forecast of categorical label "U/D" from hybrid ARIMA/k-NN model.

:pUD\_CAT\_arima\_knn\_sys&gt;

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	15692	17357	61	8	60	12
CAC	10161	16587	60	6	59	9
FTSE	15553	14960	60	8	60	10
Dow	30347	20624	62	14	60	15
Nikkei	27206	45031	60	18	60	24
AORD	9711	8751	60	5	59	6

TABLE 5.13: Results from a trading system with a stop loss using the forecast of categorical label "U/D" from hybrid ARIMA/k-NN model.

D\_CAT\_arima\_knn\_sys\_SL&gt;

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	15767	17826	60	8	59	13
CAC	10524	17378	59	6	59	9
FTSE	16562	16020	59	8	59	11
Dow	7152	-671	52	3	48	0
Nikkei	29132	48387	54	19	56	25
AORD	9743	8978	60	5	59	6

### 5.7.3 ARIMA/Support Vector Machine (SVN)

ARIMA was also married with a SVM learner in order to predict the categorical value, "U" or "D". Table 5.14 lists the results of passing forecasts made using this combination to the trading algorithm listed in A section A.2.3.

TABLE 5.14: Results from a trading system using the forecast of categorical label "U/D" from hybrid ARIMA/SVM model.

:pUD\_CAT\_arima\_svm\_sys&gt;

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	-3817	-2152	53	-2	49	-1
CAC	1044	7470	53	1	53	4
FTSE	6944	6351	54	4	51	3
Dow	4659	-5065	54	3	48	-3
Nikkei	2881	20706	57	28	52	6
AORD	972	0	52	0	NaN	NaN

## 5.8 Predicting Up or Down - Continuous Label

An alternative to using a categorical variable represented by "U" or "D" to indicate if the market rose or fell is to use the numeric range 0 to 1. Here 0 is used to indicate the market fell and 1 to indicate that it increased in value. Thus an additional attribute was introduced into the national indice data sets which took the value of 0 or 1.



### 5.8.1 ARIMA/Artificial Neural Networks (ANN)

An ARIMA/ANN model was employed in an attempt to predict the value of 0 or 1, which indicates the directional movement of the market. Table 5.15 are the results of passing the indice data sets augmented with the ARIMA/ANN forecasts to the trading algorithm listed in Appendix A section A.2.4.

TABLE 5.15: Results from a trading system using the forecast of a continuous label from a hybrid ARIMA/ANN model.

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	449	2114	100	224	48	1
CAC	-5761	665	50	-2	100	111
FTSE	747	154	52	0	100	51
Dow	2728	-6995	63	52	47	-2
Nikkei	-17151	674	49	-5	100	169
AORD	870	-90	52	0	60	-18

### 5.8.2 ARIMA/k-Nearest Neighbour (k-NN)

An ARIMA/k-NN model was used to make forecasts for the continuous variable that represents whether the market will move up or down. The output of the model is a value between 0 and 1. The trading algorithm that uses this prediction can be seen in Appendix A section A.2.5 and the results generated in Table 5.16. The trading algorithm looks at the forecast value and trades long if the values are over 0.5 and short if they are below this value.

TABLE 5.16: Results from a trading system using the forecast of a continuous label from a hybrid ARIMA/k-NN model.

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	14122	15787	64	11	55	7
CAC	11115	17540	65	10	57	7
FTSE	18156	17563	65	14	56	8
Dow	28106	18383	66	20	55	9
Nikkei	21724	39549	63	25	57	15
AORD	9607	8647	65	7	56	4

## Chapter 6

# Analysis

?Chapter6)?

### 6.1 Introduction

In chapters 4 and 5 a wide variety of analytical techniques were applied to a range of time series data sets. In Chapter 4 a number of trading algorithms were developed based on technical analysis indicators, with the intention of automating the decision of whether to buy or sell a market. For comparison purposes, two simple so called "naive" systems were explored to act as a baseline against which the technical analysis indicators could be compared. The technical indicators were grouped together into their general area of applicability, namely trend detection indicators, reversal, momentum and candlestick indicators.

Chapter 5 continued the exploration of financial time series through the use of ARIMA and hybrid ARIMA techniques. The generated models were used to create one-step forecasts which were then added to the original data sets. These ammended data sets were then fed into trading algorithms which used the forecast values to make trading decisions.

### 6.2 Baseline Systems

Initially two simple, naive systems were explored so that they could be used as a baseline against which the developed predictive models could be compared. These systems were the Naive Long System which mirrors a buy and hold strategy and a Naive Reversing System which simply trades in the opposite direction to the previous days market movement.

### 6.2.1 Naive Systems

The first baseline system tried was the Naive Long system in which a market buy is placed each day and is similar to the so-called “Buy and Hold” technique. The assumption here is that the market rises over time and if an investor simply holds a security it will eventually generate a profit. The total profit is the price at the start, in this case the data set started in 2000, subtracted from the price at the end of the period, which in this case was the end of 2013.

The first iteration of the algorithm placed a buy at the start of the trading session and closed it at the end and thus the system was out of the market overnight. This resulted in significant discrepancies from the returns expected from a buy and hold system. Table 6.1 lists the expected returns from a Buy and Hold system over this period, with the Difference column being the profit or loss over the time.

TABLE 6.1: Returns from a “Buy and Hold” technique.

Date	Start 2000	End 2013	Difference	% Change
Dax	6961	9552	+2591	+37
CAC	6024	4250	-1774	-29
FTSE	6930	6749	-181	+3
Dow	11501	16576	+5075	+44
Nik	18937	16291	-2646	-14
AORD	3152	5353	+2201	+70

From simply trading long during market hours the Dax generated a loss as opposed to the 2591 profit expected, likewise the CAC showed a much larger loss than expected and the Nikkei resulted in a large loss when a small loss was expected. The Dow, FTSE and AORD were similar to the expected values. The discrepancies in the returns between the trading algorithm and a Buy and Hold approach was due to the fact that the algorithm opened and closed trades each day as opposed to simply opening the trade and waiting several years. This first algorithm was simply trading within market hours, approximately 8am to 5pm local time, and was not in the market for the full 24 hours of the day.

Changing the algorithm such that the trades ran from the market close time until the close time of the following day and thus covered the full 24 hour period resulted in system results that matched those expected from a buy and hold approach. Clearly the discrepancies from the first algorithm were due to the relative amounts the markets moved during the day as opposed to during the “out of hours” trading. There is a slight bias for the markets to move upwards overnight and over the course of the study (14 years) adds up to significant values.

The second naive system was termed the “Naive Reversing” system and simply places a trade today in the opposite direction from the previous day. This idea produced reasonable returns, with every market making money. From these results it can be concluded that the markets have a tendency to “flip flop” and reverse back on themselves, and the phenomena of market reverses is well understood. This second concept produced far better results than the first and was thus used as the primary basis of comparison for the algorithms and systems developed from technical indicators and time series methods. For convenience the results from this system are reproduced in Table 6.2.

TABLE 6.2: Results from a naive trading system which simply trades in the opposite direction to the previous day’s movement.

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	947	3131	53	1	49	2
CAC	940	7810	53	1	53	4
FTSE	4284	4115	53	3	50	2
Dow	15799	6047	56	10	49	3
Nikkei	2324	20486	51	1	54	12
AORD	1264	237	53	1	48	0

## 6.3 Technical Analysis

### 6.3.1 Trend Detection

The first group of the technical analysis indicators studied were the trend detection indicators. Identification of trend direction and strength is very important in the world of financial trading and one of the most widely encountered phrases is “the trend is your friend”, as most authorities advocate trading in the direction of the trend. (In fact on a recent webinar it was claimed that 80% of all money made is made trading in the direction of the trend.) Well known indicators that purport to assist the trader in identifying trends are the simple moving average (SMA), the moving average convergence/divergence indicator (MACD) and the Aroon indicator.

The use of simple moving average is wide-spread in the financial markets. Market participants track moving averages or even more than one and make a decision which way to trade based on the position of the current price relative to it. Popular values to use in the SMA are 25, 50 and 200 for the look back period. The results of a trading system based on SMA is presented in Table 4.5 of Chapter 4. The algorithm places a buy trade if the current price is above the SMA and a sell trade if it is below it.

Results are mixed from using the SMA, with some markets producing positive results and some ending in losses. The German Dax and Australian AORD produce positive results across all the SMA values with returns from trading short (predicting the market will decline) doing best. The Japanese Nikkei and French CAC display different behaviour in that all the SMA values tried produce negative results in trying to predict long trades but positive returns when attempting to predict short trades. The UK's FTSE 100 is different again, producing negative results across the board. Finally, the Dow produces positive results for trades on the long side but losses for trading short.

In an attempt to improve the returns from the trading system a stop loss was introduced. Comparing Tables 4.5 and 4.6 of Chapter 4 it can be seen that applying the stop loss has been on the whole beneficial to the results obtained, with the exception of those from the Dow which were negatively impacted. Essentially losing trades have been truncated while winning trades have been left to develop. This general pattern of a stop loss being beneficial to all the markets except the US Dow was seen multiple times with the systems tested.

The second trend detection indicator explored was the Moving Average Convergence Divergence (MACD) indicator, full details of which can be found in section B.1 of Appendix B. The MACD can generally be used two ways, as a trend detection indicator and as an over-bought/over-sold indicator in which case traders use it to identify potential market reversals. In this section the indicator was used as a trend detector and the results from a system based on the MACD indicator can be seen in Table 4.7 in Chapter 4. The algorithm trades long when the value of MACD is greater than the value of the signal line, see Appendix A section A.1.3.2 for details of the R code used. The results are not very impressive, only the Nikkei producing reasonable profits, although they wouldn't beat the baseline Naive Reversing system.

The final trend detection indicator examined was Aroon. This indicator measures the number of intervals since the previous high or low within a certain time window. The algorithms presented here used a time window of 20 days. If the current day was the highest price in the last 20 days trading, the indicator would take a value of 100 and for each following day that doesn't make a new high the indicator falls by 5 (100 divided by the lag period which is 20). Thus if the highest price was four days ago the AroonUp value would be 80. The opposite situation occurs with regard to the low price. A value of 70 or above for the AroonUp is indicative of an upward trending market and likewise a value of 70 and above for AroonDn suggests a falling market.

The results from an algorithm using the Aroon indicator can be seen in Table 4.8 of Chapter 4. Overall the results are encouraging with the Dax, FTSE, Dow and AORD all producing positive returns for both long and short trades, while the CAC and Nikkei

are positive when trading short. Table 6.3 lists the values derived from the Aroon system with those from the baseline Reversing system (see Chapter 4 section 4.2.2) subtracted. Because the Aroon system doesn't execute trades each day it only makes sense to compare the average daily returns as opposed to the total returns. As can be seen from Table 6.3, compared with the baseline system for some markets the Aroon indicator outperforms the baseline while for others it is worse, notably the Nikkei. Considering the second column in Table 6.3, "Diff in Mean Long PL" only the Dax and AORD outperformed the baseline reversing system in producing long winning trades. Alternatively, the system based on the Aroon indicator was superior in predicting winning short trades for all the markets except the Nikkei, as seen in the third column "Diff in Mean Short PL".

TABLE 6.3: Results from baseline Reversing System subtracted from Aroon results.

tab:aroon\_results\_diff)

Mkt	Diff in Mean Long PL	Diff in Mean Short PL
Dax	2	2
CAC	-2	0
FTSE	-1	3
Dow	-3	0
Nikkei	-4	-2
AORD	1	3

The trading system based on the Aroon indicator was re-run with a stop loss value of 100. Overall the use of a stop loss improves the returns, with the exception of the Dow. One again using a stop loss with the Dow shows very marked negative impacts on profits. These results can be seen in 4.9 of Chapter 4.

### 6.3.2 Market Reversal Indicators

In this section two indicators that purport to assist in identifying market reversals are examined, namely the Parabolic Stop-and-Reverse (SAR) and the Moving Average Convergence Divergence (MACD) used as an over-bought/over-sold indicator.

The first market reversal indicator explored was the Parabolic Stop-and-Reverse (SAR), an indicator initially developed for traders who were always in the market with either long or short position. The SAR is used to judge when the position should be reversed from long to short or vice versa. The trading algorithm reported here trades each day (i.e opens a trade at the start of the trading session and closes it out at the end) and makes a decision regarding the direction of the trade based on the SAR indicator. If the market opening is above the SAR a long trade is initiated and vice versa if the market is below the SAR value.

The results from the trading system based on the SAR can be seen in Table 4.11 of Chapter 4 and are very poor. Only the Nikkei trading short produces reasonable results, but these are much worse than the baseline Naive Reversing method introduced previously.

As previously mentioned the MACD indicator can be used as a market reversal indicator. Once the MACD value reaches its extreme values, the market is considered over-bought or over-sold and likely to reverse back on itself. The trading algorithm using this concept expects a market reversal once the MACD crosses above the 85% quantile (of the MACD range) or below the 15% quantile. Short trades are initiated once the MACD crosses above the 85% quantile value and short trades once it has passed below the 15% quantile. The results from this trading system can be seen in Table 4.12 and are very unimpressive being inferior to the baseline method.

### 6.3.3 Momentum Indicators

A third category of technical indicators are the momentum indicators, which are related to the trend detection indicators. Two such indicators are studied here, the Stochastic and Rate of Change (ROC). The stochastic oscillator is one of the oldest and most widely used of the technical indicators. It measures the percentage position the current close is in relation to the high low range of the period of interest. For example the current close could be 80% of the way between the low and high of the last 10 days. Thus it has conceptual similarities to the Aroon indicator. The stochastic is usually represented by two lines %K which is the position of the price within this high low envelope described above, and %D a moving average of %K (see Appendix B section B.4 for more details).

The trading algorithm utilising the stochastic initiates long trades when %K is above %D and short trades when %K is below %D. Results from an algorithm implementing these ideas can be seen in Table 4.13 in Chapter 4. The results of this system are poor being significantly worse than the baseline Naive Reversing system.

The second momentum indicator is the Rate Of Change (ROC) indicator, and this is simply the difference between the current price and a price a certain number of days previously. If this value is positive the market is considered to be trending up and the larger the value the greater the trending momentum. The results from an algorithm using these ideas is presented in Table 4.13 of Chapter 4. The results are positive but very modest and inferior to the baseline Reversing system.

### 6.3.4 Breakout systems

The fourth area of technical analysis explored the idea of trade signals being generated by a particular value from the previous day, so-called breakout systems. Two particular values are used as the trigger price for a trade, the previous day's high/low or the 90% quantile of the minor move (see section 3.3.5 of Chapter 3).

The first idea explored was to use the previous time period's high or low price as a trigger for a buy or sell. If the current day's high price exceeded the previous day's high price a long trade would be made and in a similar manner if today's low price is lower than previous day's low a short trade is initiated. Results from using the previous day's high price or low price as a trigger to trade long or short can be seen in Table 4.16. Generally the results are very good with the exception of the Dow. These results can be linked to the data exploratory work shown in Table 3.6 of section 3.3.3. The best returns were generated in the Nikkei, a market which had the highest number of times closing outside the previous day's high or low. Conversely, the lowest ranked market in terms of closing outside yesterday's high low range was the Dow, and this was the one market that produced negative results in the break-out system. Table 6.4 lists the returns from the high low breakout system with the profits from the baseline Naive Reversing system subtracted. As can be seen, with the exception of the Dow, the method out-performs the baseline system markedly.

TABLE 6.4: Results from Daily High / Low Breakout System compared with Naive Reversing System

(tab:hl\_bout\_sys\_diff)

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	20126	18098	5	10	7	11
CAC	13312	12366	5	7	6	8
FTSE	8955	14499	6	4	9	10
Dow	-35154	-33381	-14	-21	-11	-20
Nikkei	72276	61159	13	43	10	37
AORD	18083	21007	14	10	17	14

The second break-out system used the minor fluctuation 90% quantile value as the trigger level to trade long or short. Once the market moved above this level a long trade was made or if the market moved below this level a short trade was executed. Overall this methodology produces good results with the exception of the Dow and CAC. Table 6.5 lists the difference in results between this breakout methodology and the baseline Naive Reversing system.



TABLE 6.5: Results 90% Quantile level Breakout System compared with Naive Reversing System

&lt;tab:chp\_ta\_90q\_diff&gt;

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	6894	3240	3	5	4	2
CAC	1707	-2725	1	1	-1	-1
FTSE	6474	11180	3	4	4	8
Dow	-46061	-40901	-17	-34	-12	-31
Nikkei	21282	11344	7	15	2	8
AORD	15466	19120	10	8	14	12

### 6.3.5 Candlestick Patterns

A number of so-called candlestick patterns were explored for predictive properties in financial markets. The patterns tested were essentially market reversal patterns. Firstly, Hammer and Inverted Hammer were considered. When these patterns occur it is considered a sign that the market will move upwards, especially when they are encountered in a down trend, thus reversing direction. Table 4.18 lists the results from placing buy trades after all occurrences of either pattern while Table 4.19 shows the results from initiating buy trades when these patterns occur in trending markets. The Aroon indicator detailed in section B.2 of Appendix B was used to determine if the market was in a trending phase. Overall the results from using the Hammer or Inverted Hammer candlestick pattern to predict market movement was poor. Only the Dow and FTSE showed positive results, although the per trade profit from the Dow was good. Another consideration is the small number of times in which these patterns occur, only 22 trades in the 14 years of the Dow data were made. Clearly these visual patterns are quite subjective and in reality a trader would use judgement as to whether the pattern constituted a Hammer or not. However, in developing an algorithm to recognise and trade them no such latitude is possible and thus the number of trades taken by the algorithms is likely to be less than in reality.

The next pattern tested was the Engulfing pattern. This pattern occurs when a candlestick has a lower low and a higher high than the previous day's candlestick, it engulfs it. The presence of this pattern it supposed to indicate that the market will change direction. The results of a trading algorithm that trades long or short depending upon the presence of an Engulfing candlestick can be seen in Table 4.20. The results shown in Table 4.21 are similar to Table 4.20 except trades are only taken if the market is trending, with the Aroon indicator used to determine if the market is in a trending phase. The results from both algorithms were very poor, with most markets showing negative results.

The final pattern tested was the Doji, one of the best known candlestick patterns. Again the presence of this pattern in a trending market is supposed to give warning to the market participants that a reversal may be imminent. Table 4.22 shows the results of a trading system that uses the presence of a Doji in a trending market to initiate a trade. Again the results are very poor with mostly negative returns.

## 6.4 Time Series Analysis

ARIMA and hybrid ARIMA models were used to generate forecasts of the closing prices and the more general situation of whether the market would rise or fall. In modelling the more general situation of market direction a categorical and a continuous label was employed. The categorical label used “U” to represent occasions when the market prices increased and “D” for when it decreased in value. Alternatively the values 1 and 0 were also used to represent up and down respectively. The primary difference between the two labels was in the values returned from the hybrid ARIMA models. When using 1 and 0 for the class label the models return a value in the range of 1 to 0, whereas for the categorical value there was only the choice of the two values.

### 6.4.1 ARIMA Models

The `auto.arima()` function of the R forecast package was used to assist in generating ARIMA models for the national indice data sets used in this study. For convenience the models selected are listed in Table 6.6.

TABLE 6.6: Arima models chosen to forecast future values in the national indice data sets.

Market	Arima Model
Dax	ARIMA(3,1,3)
CAC	ARIMA(2,1,3)
FTSE	ARIMA(2,1,3)
Dow	ARIMA(1,1,2)
Nikkei	ARIMA(2,1,3)
AORD	ARIMA(1,1,0)

The one-step forecasts generated from these models were then used in two trading systems. In the first algorithm the decision to trade long or short was dependant upon on the relative values of the previous close price and the forecast. If the forecast was higher than the close price a long trade was entered in the expectation that the market would rise towards the prediction. The opposite situation was expected for when the

forecast was lower than the close price. The R code for this first algorithm can be seen in Appendix A section A.2.1 and is labelled system 1.

The second trading algorithm used the relative values of the predictions themselves in order to decide whether to trade long or short. If the current forecast was higher than the previous one a long trade was made and vice versa. The R code for this second algorithm can be seen in Appendix A section A.2.2 and is labelled system 2.

The results from both systems were poor. The difference in mean PL per trade between the first system based on the auto.arima models (previous close in comparison to forecast) and the mean PL for the Naive Reversing system from section 4.2.2 Chapter 4 can be seen in Table 6.7. Most of the results are worse than the naive baseline system except for the French CAC and US Dow when trading long.

TABLE 6.7: Mean Long/Short PL from system using predictions from ARIMA models with the results from the Naive Reverse system subtracted.

tab:chp\_ts:arima1\_diff

Mkt	Diff in Mean Long PL	Diff in Mean Short PL
Dax	-4	-9
CAC	5	-1
FTSE	-1	-4
Dow	4	-9
Nikkei	-1	-17
AORD	2	-1

### 6.4.2 ARIMA Hybrids - Predicting Closing Price

Hybrid ARIMA models in which Artificial Neural Networks and k-Nearest Neighbour algorithms were used instead of regression in the ARIMA algorithm were used to predict the closing prices of financial markets, see Chapter 5 section 5.5 for details.

#### 6.4.2.1 ARIMA/Artificial Neural Networks (ANN)

Overall the use of the models generated from hybrid ARIMA/ANN algorithms to create trading systems was not very successful. The results from passing the indice data sets augmented with a forecast attribute generated by the hybrid ARIMA models can be seen in Tables 5.7 and 5.8 of Chapter 5. System 1 compares the price of the forecast with the price of the previous close and in the event that the prediction is higher than the previous closing price a long trade is entered. The opposite is true when the forecast is lower than the closing price and a short trade is made. System 2 is similar but compares the forecast with the last forecast. In the event that the current prediction is greater than the previous one a long trade is initiated.

Considering the results in Tables 5.7 and 5.8 it can be seen that System 1 outperforms System 2 quite markedly. Even so, the results are quite modest across most of the indices and especially poor for the Dax. The results prove inferior to the baseline Naive Reversing System introduced in 4.2.2 Chapter 4 as shown in Table 6.8.

TABLE 6.8: Results from a trading system based on forecasts of closing price generated by the Arima/ANN model compared to baseline Naive Reversing methodology.

ts:arima\_ann\_sys1\_diff)

Mkt	Diff in Mean Long PL	Diff in Mean Short PL
Dax	-1	323
CAC	-1	1
FTSE	29	-2
Dow	-6	1
Nikkei	3	-6
AORD	2	0

#### 6.4.2.2 ARIMA/k-Nearest Neighbour (k-NN)

An alternative to the ARIMA/ANN methodology is to replace ANN with a k-Nearest Neighbour learner. Results from using the forecasts generated in the two trading systems introduced in section 5.4 can be seen in Tables 5.9 and 5.10. The results from System 1 are very good and exceed the baseline Naive Reversing approach. Table 6.9 lists the difference in results between those generated with System 1 and the ARIMA/k-NN models and the baseline system. In all cases the hybrid ARIMA model produces superior results.

TABLE 6.9: Results from a system using forecasts from a Arima/k-NN model with the results of the Naive Reversing System subtracted.

se\_arima\_knn\_sys1\_diff)

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	7323	6769	3	3	3	4
CAC	5344	4787	1	2	2	3
FTSE	13321	12911	5	6	6	8
Dow	14531	14502	3	7	4	9
Nikkei	13050	12880	3	8	3	8
AORD	6394	6401	4	3	5	4

#### 6.4.3 ARIMA Hybrids - Predicting Up Down with Categorical Label

An alternative to forecasting the closing price of a financial market is to predict the general direction it will move in the short term either up or down. To this end an additional categorical label to indicate whether the market increased or fell in value over the course of the day was introduced into the data sets. This new attribute had the

value “U” if the market increased and “D” if it decreased. Hybrid ARIMA models were then employed to predict this label.

#### 6.4.3.1 ARIMA/Artificial Neural Networks (ANN)

The first methodology employed was to combine ARIMA with Artificial Neural Networks (ANN) in order to generate a forecast of the categorical label that indicated whether the market increased in value or fell over the course of the day. Once the forecast was generated and added to the data set in the form of a new attribute it was passed to a trading algorithm which based the decision whether to trade long or short on the forecast generated. The R code for the trading algorithm can be seen in Appendix A section A.2.3 and the results generated in Table 5.11. Overall the results were poor and inferior to the baseline system used for comparison.

#### 6.4.3.2 ARIMA/k-Nearest Neighbour (k-NN)

Replacing the ANN learner from the previous section with a k-NN method resulted in far better results. Table 5.12 lists the results of passing the forecasts from this combination to the trading algorithm in Appendix A section A.2.3. Across all the data sets large positive results are recorded. Table 6.10 lists the difference in results between using this hybrid ARIMA approach and the usual baseline returns. Clearly this methodology produces superior results. Using a stop loss with this system increases the returns from all the markets except the US Dow and these results are listed in Table 5.13.

TABLE 6.10: Results from Naive Reversing System subtracted from results generated from predicting Up/Down categorical label using Arima/k-NN.

CAT_arima_knn_sys_diff)	Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
	Dax	14745	14226	8	7	11	10
	CAC	9221	8777	7	5	6	5
	FTSE	11269	10845	7	5	10	8
	Dow	14548	14577	6	4	11	12
	Nikkei	24882	24545	9	17	6	12
	AORD	8447	8514	7	4	11	6

#### 6.4.4 ARIMA Hybrids - Predicting Up Down with Numeric Label

The final approach adopted was to represent whether a financial market moved up or down by using 1 to signify that the market moved up and 0 that it moved down. The implications of using a numeric value is that the forecasts were in a range between these

two values. In such circumstances the trading algorithms picked long trades when the prediction were in the upper half of the range.

#### 6.4.4.1 ARIMA/Artificial Neural Networks (ANN)

An hybrid approach using ARIMA and ANN was used to make one-step forecasts for the future direction of the market, either up (1) or down (0). Table 5.15 in Chapter 5 lists the results of passing the indice data sets augmented with the ARIMA/ANN forecasts to the trading algorithm listed in Appendix A section A.2.4. Overall the results are poor, especially for the Japanese Nikkei trading long and inferior to the Naive Reversing system that is used as a comparative baseline.

#### 6.4.4.2 ARIMA/k-Nearest Neighbour (k-NN)

Finally a k-Nearest Neighbour (k-NN) learner was used instead of the ANN algorithm. The models were used to calculate the one-step ahead forecast as represented by a numeric value between 0 and 1. The forecast was added to the data sets and passed to the trading listed in Appendix A section A.2.5. In common with other forecast using the hybrid k-NN approach good results were obtained and these can be seen in Table 5.16 of Chapter 5. The results are much better than the baseline system which simply trades based on doing the opposite of what happened yesterday. Table 6.11 lists the difference in terms of performance between the two systems and is simply the values in Table ?? from Chapter 4 subtracted from the results in Table 5.16 from Chapter 5.

TABLE 6.11: Results from Naive Reversing System subtracted from results generated from predicting Up/Down Numerical label using Arima/k-NN.

\_01\_arima\_knn\_sys\_diff)

Mkt	LongPL	ShortPL	L Win %	Av L PL	S Win %	Av S PL
Dax	13175	12656	11	10	6	5
CAC	10175	9730	12	9	4	3
FTSE	13872	13448	12	11	6	6
Dow	12307	12336	10	10	6	6
Nikkei	19400	19063	12	24	3	3
AORD	8343	8410	12	6	8	4

## 6.5 Conclusion

TA - not much cop -> b/out good, trend Det - Aroon OK, Rev no good ...

## 6.6 Future Work

candlestick systems -> price 2,,3,4 days ahead? combining systems k-NN seems promising additional markets

# Chapter 7

## To Do - Not for Thesis

?Chapter7?

- - remove date from opening page ...
- - consistency - long / short
- - consistency - Nik, FTSE, Oz

### 7.1 Chp2

- R Code for graphs in own Script
- - [2.2.5](#) - sort out chapter2 - do we need 2 x ACF plots?
- -> stationary series - coghlan: no seasonality ot trend ... further additive -> without trend ...
- - Exp smoothing - relevance?

### 7.2 Chp3

- R Code for graphs in own Script
- section [1.1.2](#) - Add refs for TA methods mentioned.
- table check list - cap top, llcccc etc, big cap, sm cap
- Lane [Lane \(1986\)](#) and williams [Williams \(2011\)](#) [Williams \(1989\)](#) - Chp5c - stoch



### 7.3 Chp4

- cosistent - stop loss, stopped out
- aroon ref,
- Candlestick details - move to Appendix for consistency?
- candlestick systems -> price 2,,3,4 days ahead?

### 7.4 Chp5

- - reftodo-Examine ACF / PACF - - interpret acf graph
- - [5.6.1](#) - results?
- - [5.7.1](#) - results?

### 7.5 App A

- - app A - sub titles

“participant

# Appendix A

## R Code

⟨AppendixA⟩

### A.1 Chapter 4

The R code used to generate the results and tables in Chapter 4 is shown in listing A.1.1. This is followed by the individual files containing the algorithms used in the chapter.

#### A.1.1 Chapter 4 Results Generation

⟨appA:Chp4\_R⟩

```
1 # Chapter 4
2 setwd("D:/Allan/DropBox/MSc/Dissertation/Thesis/RCode")
3
4 # Housekeeping
5 library(xtable)
6 library(TTR)
7 library(candlesticks)
8
9 source("../RCode//Utils.R")
10 source("../RCode//NaiveLongSystem.R")
11 source("../RCode//NaiveLongSystem2.R")
12 source("../RCode//NaiveReversePrev.R")
13 source("../RCode//SMA_sys.R")
14 source("../RCode//MACD_XO.R")
15 source("../RCode//Aroon.R")
16 source("../RCode//SAR.R")
17 source("../RCode//Stoch.R")
18 source("../RCode//ROC.R")
19 source("../RCode//ROC2.R")
20 source("../RCode//MACD_OB.R")
21 source("../RCode//Bout_sys.R")
22 source("../RCode//Quant90_sys.R")
23 source("../RCode//Candle_Hammer.R")
24 source("../RCode//Candle_Hammer_aroon.R")
25 source("../RCode//Candle_Engulf.R")
26 source("../RCode//Candle_Engulf_aroon.R")
```

```

27 source("../RCode//Candle_Doji_aroon.R")
28
29 fil <- c("../Data/Dax_2000_d.csv",
30         "../Data/CAC_2000_d.csv",
31         "../Data/F100_2000_d.csv",
32         "../Data/Dow_2000_d.csv",
33         "../Data/N225_2000_d.csv",
34         "../Data/Oz_2000.csv")
35 #nm <- c("Dax", "CAC", "FTSE", "Dow", "Nikkei", "AORD")
36 df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11)) # to hold results
37
38 std6 <- c(1,3,4,5,7,8,10)
39
40 df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
41 NaiveRev <- run_NaiveReversePrev(fil, 0, nm)
42
43 # -----
44 # ----- 1. Naive Long (Sub Chapter) -----
45
46 run_NaiveLongSystem <- function(fil, SLoss, nm){
47   df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
48   for(i in 1:length(fil)){
49     Mkt <- read.csv(fil[i])
50     a <- NaiveLongSystem(Mkt, SLoss, nm[i])
51     df10 <- rbind(df10, a)
52   }
53   df.name <- names(a)
54   names(df10) <- df.name
55   df10 <- df10[-1,]
56   return(df10)
57 }
58
59 res1 <- run_NaiveLongSystem(fil,0,nm)
60
61 # produce latex table
62 dat <- res1[,c(1,3,5,7)]
63 dig <- 2
64 cap = c('Naive Long System. A very simple system in which the algorithm assumes
65         the market will rise and enters a long trade each day.',
66         'Results from the Naive Long System')
67 lab = 'tab:nlng_results'
68 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_naive_long.tex'
69 inclrnam=FALSE
70 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
71
72 # -----
73 # ----- previous close and today's close
74
75 run_NaiveLongSystem2 <- function(fil,SLoss, nm){
76   df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
77   for(i in 1:length(fil)){
78     Dax <- read.csv(fil[i])
79     a <- NaiveLongSystem2(Dax, 0, nm[i])
80     df10 <- rbind(df10, a)

```

```

81 df.name <- names(a)
82 names(df10) <- df.name
83 df10 <- df10[-1,]
84 return(df10)
85 }
86
87 res2 <- run_NaiveLongSystem2(fil,0,nm)
88
89 # produce latex table
90 dat <- res2[,c(1,3,5,7)]
91 dig <- 2
92 cap = c('Naive Long System changed such that the trading period is the previous
          close price minus today\'s close.',
93         'Results from the Naive Long System trading close to close')
94 lab = 'tab:nlng_results_2'
95 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_naive_long_ctoc.tex'
96 inclrnam=FALSE
97 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
98
99
100 # -----
101 # ----- Reverse Previous -----
102 # -----
103
104 res3 <- run_NaiveReversePrev(fil, 0, nm)
105
106 # produce latex table
107 dat <- res3[,c(1,3,4,5,7,8,10)]
108 dig <- 2
109 cap = c('Results from a naive trading system which simply trades in the opposite
          direction to the previous day\'s movement.',
110         'Results from the Naive Reversing System.')
111 lab = 'tab:n_rev_results'
112 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_naive_reverse_prev.tex'
113 inclrnam=FALSE
114 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
115
116 # repeat latex table for Chp6 - affects numbering if re-use ...
117 dat <- res3[,c(1,3,4,5,7,8,10)]
118 dig <- 2
119 cap = c('Results from a naive trading system which simply trades in the opposite
          direction to the previous day\'s movement.',
120         'Results from the Naive Reversing System.')
121 lab = 'tab:n_rev_results_chp6'
122 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_naive_reverse_prev_chp6.tex'
123 inclrnam=FALSE
124 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
125
126 # repeat with a stop loss
127 res3a <- run_NaiveReversePrev(fil, -75, nm)
128 #tt <- sub_df(res3a,res3);tt
129
130 # produce latex table
131 dat <- res3a[,std6]
132 dig <- 2

```

```

133 cap = c('Naive system which reverses the previous day\'s trade direction with
      stop loss.',
134         'Naive Following System.')
135 lab = 'tab:n_rev_results_sl'
136 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_naive_reverse_prev_sl.tex'
137 inclrnam=FALSE
138 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
139
140
141 # -----
142 #
      -----
143 # section{Trend Detection Indicators}
144
145 # SMA
146 run_BaseSystem1SMA <- function(fil,SLoss,nm){
147   df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
148   for(i in 1:length(fil)){
149     Dax <- read.csv(fil[i])
150     a <- BaseSystem1SMA(Dax, 5, SLoss, nm[i])
151     b <- BaseSystem1SMA(Dax, 25, SLoss, nm[i])
152     c <- BaseSystem1SMA(Dax, 50, SLoss, nm[i])
153     d <- BaseSystem1SMA(Dax, 100, SLoss, nm[i])
154     e <- BaseSystem1SMA(Dax, 200, SLoss, nm[i])
155     df10 <- rbind(df10, a, b, c, d, e)
156   }
157   df.name <- names(a)
158   names(df10) <- df.name
159   df10 <- df10[-1,]
160   return(df10)
161 }
162
163 res4 <- run_BaseSystem1SMA(fil,0,nm)
164
165 dat <- res4[,c(1,3,4,5,7,8,10,11)]
166 dig <- 2
167 cap = c('Results from a system based on SMA.', 'Results from a system based on SMA
      ')
168 lab = 'tab:sma_results'
169 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_sma.tex'
170 inclrnam=FALSE
171 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
172
173 # SMA SLoss
174 run_BaseSystem1SMA2 <- function(fil,SLoss,nm){
175   df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
176   for(i in 1:length(fil)){
177     Dax <- read.csv(fil[i])
178     h <- BaseSystem1SMA(Dax, 100, -50, nm[i])
179     hh <- BaseSystem1SMA(Dax, 100, -100, nm[i]) #don't use i !!!!!
180     df10 <- rbind(df10,h,hh)
181   }
182   df.name <- names(hh)
183   names(df10) <- df.name

```

```

184   df10 <- df10[-1,]
185   return(df10)
186 }
187
188 res5 <- run_BaseSystem1SMA2(fil,0,nm)
189
190 dat <- res5[,c(1,2,3,4,5,6,8,9,11)]
191 dig <- 2
192 cap = c('Results from a system based on SMA with stop loss.',
193         'Results from a system based on SMA with stop loss')
194 lab = 'tab:sma_results_Sloss'
195 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_sma_sloss.tex'
196 inclrnam=FALSE
197 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
198
199 # -----
200 # subsection{Moving Average Convergence/Divergence (MACD)}
201 # subsubsection{MACD as trend Indicator}
202
203 run_MACD_X0 <- function(fil,SLoss,nm){
204   df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
205   for(i in 1:length(fil)){
206     Mkt <- read.csv(fil[i])
207     ma <- MACD( Mkt[, "Open"], 12, 26, 9, maType="EMA" ) #calc MACD values
208     Mkt <- cbind(Mkt, ma)
209     a <- MACD_X0(Mkt, SLoss, nm[i])
210     df10 <- rbind(df10,a)
211   }
212   df.name <- names(a)
213   names(df10) <- df.name
214   df10 <- df10[-1,]
215   return(df10)
216 }
217
218 res6 <- run_MACD_X0(fil,0,nm)
219
220 dat <- res6[,std6]
221 dig <- 2
222 cap = c('Results from a system using MACD as a trend indicator.',
223         'Results from a system using MACD as a trend indicator')
224 lab = 'tab:mac_trend_results'
225 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_macd.tex'
226 inclrnam=FALSE
227 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
228
229
230 # -----
231 # ----- Aroon -----
232
233 run_aroon_sys <- function(fil,SLoss,nm){
234   df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
235   for(i in 1:length(fil)){
236     Mkt <- read.csv(fil[i])
237     ar <- aroon(Mkt[c(3,4)], n=20) #calc Aroon values

```

```

238     Mkt <- cbind(Mkt, ar)                                #Add Aroon values to orig
data set
239     a <- aroon_sys(Mkt, SLoss, nm[i])
240     df10 <- rbind(df10,a)
241   }
242   df.name <- names(a)
243   names(df10) <- df.name
244   df10 <- df10[-1,]
245   return(df10)
246 }
247
248 res7 <- run_aroon_sys(fil,0,nm)
249
250 dat <- res7[,std6]
251 dig <- 2
252 cap = c('Results from a system based on the Aroon indicator.',
253         'Results from a system based on the Aroon indicator')
254 lab = 'tab:aroon_results'
255 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_aroon.tex'
256 inclrnam=FALSE
257 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
258
259
260 # Aroon with SLoss
261 aroondfsl <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
262 for(i in 1:length(fil)){
263     Dax <- read.csv(fil[i])                                #read data
264     ar <- aroon(Dax[c(3,4)], n=20)                        #calc Aroon values
265     Dax <- cbind(Dax, ar)                                #Add Aroon values to orig data
set
266     a <- aroon_sys(Dax, -100, nm[i])                      #Call fnc
267     aroondfsl <- rbind(aroondfsl, a)
268 }
269 df.name <- names(a)
270 names(aroondfsl) <- df.name
271
272 res7a <- run_aroon_sys(fil,-100,nm)
273 aroondfsl <- res7a
274
275 dat <- res7a[,std6]
276 dig <- 2
277 cap = c('Results from a system based on the Aroon indicator with stop loss.',
278         'Results from a system based on the Aroon indicator with
stop loss')
279 lab = 'tab:aroon_results_sloss'
280 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_aroon_sloss.tex'
281 inclrnam=FALSE
282 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
283
284 # Aroon - Diffs - between Aroon and Aroon with Stop Loss
285 aroondfslldf <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(3),nrow=1,ncol=3))
286 ln <- nrow(aroondfsl)
287 res <- 1:3
288 for(i in 1:ln){
289     res[i] <- aroondfsl[i,1]

```

```

290   res[2] <- as.numeric(res7a[i,3]) - as.numeric(res7[i,3])
291   res[3] <- as.numeric(res7a[i,4]) - as.numeric(res7[i,4])
292   aroondfsldf <- rbind(aroondfsldf,res)
293 }
294 df.name <- c("Market", "Long Difference", "Short Difference")
295 names(aroondfsldf) <- df.name
296 aroondfsldf <- aroondfsldf[-1,]
297
298 dat <- aroondfsldf[,c(1,2,3)]
299 dig <- 2
300 cap = c('Impact of using stop loss with Aroon trend indicator.',
301         'Impact of using stop loss with Aroon trend indicator')
302 lab = 'tab:aroon_results_sloss_diff'
303 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_aroon_sloss_diff.tex'
304 inclrnam=FALSE
305 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
306
307 # Aroon compared to baseline system
308 res7_diff <- sub_df_av_pl(res7,NaiveRev)
309 #print table
310 dat <- res7_diff
311 dig <- 0
312 cap = c('Results from baseline Reversing System subtracted from Aroon results.',
313         'Aroon results minus baseline')
314 lab = 'tab:aroon_results_diff'
315 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_aroon_diff.tex'
316 inclrnam=FALSE
317 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
318
319 # -----
320 # ----- Trend REversal -----
321
322 # ----- SAR
323 run_sar_sys <- function(fil,SLoss,nm){
324   df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
325   for(i in 1:length(fil)){
326     Mkt <- read.csv(fil[i])
327     sar <- SAR(Mkt[c(3,4)]) #HL
328     Mkt <- cbind(Mkt,sar)
329     a <- sar_sys(Mkt,SLoss, nm[i])
330     df10 <- rbind(df10,a)
331   }
332   df.name <- names(a)
333   names(df10) <- df.name
334   df10 <- df10[-1,]
335   return(df10)
336 }
337
338 res8 <- run_sar_sys(fil,0,nm)
339
340 dat <- res8[,std6]
341 dig <- 2
342 cap = c('Results from a system based on the SAR indicator.',
343         'Results from a system based on the SAR indicator')
344 lab = 'tab:sar_results'

```



```

345 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_sar.tex'
346 inclrnam=FALSE
347 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
348
349
350 # -----
351 # ----- MACD OB -----
352
353 run_MACD_OB <- function(fil,SLoss,nm){
354   df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
355   for(i in 1:length(fil)){
356     Mkt <- read.csv(fil[i])
357     ma <- MACD( Mkt[, "Open"], 12, 26, 9, maType="EMA" ) #calc MACD values
358     Mkt <- cbind(Mkt, ma)                                #Add MACD values to orig
359     data set                                             #Calc low val for algo
360     lw <- quantile(Mkt$macd, na.rm=T, probs=0.15)       #Calc up val for algo
361     up <- quantile(Mkt$macd, na.rm=T, probs=0.85)
362     a <- MACD_OB(Mkt, 0, nm[i], lw, up)
363     df10 <- rbind(df10,a)
364   }
365   df.name <- names(a)
366   names(df10) <- df.name
367   df10 <- df10[-1,]
368   return(df10)
369 }
370 res9 <- run_MACD_OB(fil,0,nm)
371
372 dat <- res9[,std6]
373 dig <- 2
374 cap = c('Results from a trading system based on MACD being used as a trend
375         reveral indicator.',
376         'Results from a system based on MACD as trend reversal
377         indicator')
378 lab = 'tab:mac_ob_results'
379 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_macd_ob.tex'
380 inclrnam=FALSE
381 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
382
383 # -----
384 # ----- stoch -----
385
386 ln <- nrow(df10)
387 for(i in 1:length(fil)){
388   Dax <- read.csv(fil[i])
389   st <- stoch(Dax[c(3,4,5)]) #HL
390   Dax <- cbind(Dax,st)
391   a <- stoch_sys(Dax, 0, nm[i])
392   df10 <- rbind(df10, a)
393 }
394 df10 <- df10[-c(1:ln-1),]
395
396 run_stoch_sys <- function(fil,SLoss,nm){
397   df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))

```

```

397   for(i in 1:length(fil)){
398     Mkt <- read.csv(fil[i])
399     st <- stoch(Mkt[c(3,4,5)]) #HL
400     Mkt <- cbind(Mkt,st)
401     a <- stoch_sys(Mkt, SLoss, nm[i])
402     df10 <- rbind(df10,a)
403   }
404   df.name <- names(a)
405   names(df10) <- df.name
406   df10 <- df10[-1,]
407   return(df10)
408 }
409
410 res10 <- run_stoch_sys(fil,0,nm)
411
412 dat <- res10[,std6]
413 dig <- 2
414 cap = c('Results from a system based on the Stochastic indicator.',
415         'Results from a system based on the Stochastic indicator')
416 lab = 'tab:stoch_results'
417 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_stoch.tex'
418 inclrnam=FALSE
419 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
420
421
422 # Stock plus SLoss
423 res10a <- run_stoch_sys(fil,-100,nm)
424
425 dat <- res10a[,std6]
426 dig <- 2
427 cap = c('Results from a system based on the Stochastic indicator with a stop
428         loss.',
429         'Results from a system based on the Stochastic indicator with a stop
430         loss')
431 lab = 'tab:stoch_results_sloss'
432 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_stoch_sloss.tex'
433 inclrnam=FALSE
434 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
435
436 #-----
437 # ----- ROC -----
438
439 run_roc_sys <- function(fil,SLoss,nm){
440   df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
441   for(i in 1:length(fil)){
442     Mkt <- read.csv(fil[i])
443     roc <- ROC( Mkt$Close )           #calc MACD values
444     Mkt <- cbind(Mkt, roc)           #Add MACD values to orig
445                                     data set
446     lw <- quantile(Mkt$roc, na.rm=T, probs=0.15) #Calc low val for algo
447     up <- quantile(Mkt$roc, na.rm=T, probs=0.85) #Calc up val for algo
448     a <- roc_sys(Mkt, SLoss, nm[i], lw, up)
449     df10 <- rbind(df10,a)
450   }
451   df.name <- names(a)

```

```

449   names(df10) <- df.name
450   df10 <- df10[-1,]
451   return(df10)
452 }
453
454 res11 <- run_roc_sys(fil,0,nm)
455
456 dat <- res11[,std6]
457 dig <- 2
458 cap = c('Results from a system based on the ROC indicator.',
459         'Results from a system based on the ROC indicator')
460 lab = 'tab:mac_roc_results'
461 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_roc.tex'
462 inclrnam=FALSE
463 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
464
465 # ROC 2
466 #If previous ROC was greater or smaller than 0:
467 #source("../RCode//ROC2.R")
468 # ln <- nrow(df10)
469 # #results <- 1:11
470 # for(i in 1:length(fil)){
471 #   Mkt <- read.csv(fil[i])           #read data
472 #   roc <- ROC( Mkt$Close )          #calc MACD values
473 #   Mkt <- cbind(Mkt, roc)           #Add MACD values to orig
474 #                                     data set
475 #   lw <- quantile(Mkt$roc, na.rm=T, probs=0.15) #Calc low val for algo
476 #   up <- quantile(Mkt$roc, na.rm=T, probs=0.85) #Calc up val for algo
477 #   a <- roc_sys2(Mkt, 0, nm[i])      #Call fnc
478 #   df10 <- rbind(df10, a)            #add results
479 # }
480 #
481 # dat <- df10[-1,std6]
482 # dig <- 2
483 # cap = c('ROC2.',
484 #         'ROC2')
485 # lab = 'tab:mac_roc2_results'
486 # filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_roc2.tex'
487 # inclrnam=FALSE
488 # print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
489
490 # -----
491 # -----section{Break-out systems}
492
493 #-----
494 # ----- Break Out -----
495 run_BaseSystem2Bout <- function(fil,Sloss,nm){
496   df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
497   for(i in 1:length(fil)){
498     Mkt <- read.csv(fil[i])
499     a <- BaseSystem2Bout(Mkt, Sloss, nm[i])
500     df10 <- rbind(df10,a)
501   }
502   df.name <- names(a)

```

```

503   names(df10) <- df.name
504   df10 <- df10[-1,]
505   return(df10)
506 }
507
508 res12 <- run_BaseSystem2Bout(fil,0,nm)
509
510 dat <- res12[,std6]
511 dig <- 2
512 cap = c('Results from the Daily High / Low Breakout System.',
513         'Results from the Daily High / Low Breakout System')
514 lab = 'tab:hl_bout_sys'
515 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_b_out.tex'
516 inclrnam=FALSE
517 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
518
519 # comp to Naive
520 res_diff <- sub_df(res12,NaiveRev)
521
522 dat <- res_diff[,c(1,3,4,5,7,8,10)]
523 dig <- 0
524 cap <- c("Results from Daily High / Low Breakout System compared with Naive
525         Reversing System",
526         "Daily High / Low Breakout System compared with Naive Reversing System")
527 lab = 'tab:hl_bout_sys_diff'
528 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_b_out_diff.tex'
529 inclrnam=FALSE
530 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
531
532 #-----
533 # ----- 90% Quant -----
534
535 run_BaseSystem3Quant902 <- function(fil,SLoss,nm){
536   df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
537   for(i in 1:length(fil)){
538     Mkt <- read.csv(fil[i])
539     a <- BaseSystem3Quant902(Mkt, SLoss, nm[i])
540     df10 <- rbind(df10,a)
541   }
542   df.name <- names(a)
543   names(df10) <- df.name
544   df10 <- df10[-1,]
545   return(df10)
546 }
547
548 res14 <- run_BaseSystem3Quant902(fil,0,nm)
549
550 dat <- res14[,std6]
551 dig <- 2
552 cap = c('Results from a system that breaks out from the 90\\% quantile level of
553         the day\\'s minor move.',
554         'Results from a break out system using the day\\'s the minor move')
555 lab = 'tab:q_90_results'
556 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_90q.tex'

```

```

556 inclrnam=FALSE
557 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
558
559 # comp to Naive
560 res_diff <- sub_df(res14,NaiveRev)
561
562 dat <- res_diff[,c(1,3,4,5,7,8,10)]
563 dig <- 0
564 cap <- c("Results 90\\% Quantile level Breakout System compared with Naive
          Reversing System",
          "Daily 90\\% Quantile level Breakout System compared with Naive
          Reversing System")
565
566 lab = 'tab:chp_ta_90q_diff'
567 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_90q_diff.tex'
568 inclrnam=FALSE
569 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
570
571
572 # -----
573 # -----section{Candlestick Patterns}
574
575 run_candle_hammer <- function(fil,SLoss,nm){
576   df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
577   for(i in 1:length(fil)){
578     Mkt <- read.csv(fil[i],stringsAsFactors = FALSE)
579     Mkt <- Mkt[,c(1,2,3,4,5)]
580     Mkt$date <- as.POSIXct(Mkt$date,format='%d/%m/%Y')
581     Mkt_xts <- xts(Mkt[,c(2,3,4,5)],Mkt$date)
582     hh <- as.data.frame(CSPHammer(Mkt_xts))
583     hi <- as.data.frame(CSPInvertedHammer(Mkt_xts))
584     Mkt <- cbind(Mkt,hh)
585     Mkt <- cbind(Mkt,hi)
586     a <- candle_hammer(Mkt,SLoss, nm[i])
587     df10 <- rbind(df10,a)
588   }
589   df.name <- names(a)
590   names(df10) <- df.name
591   df10 <- df10[-1,]
592   return(df10)
593 }
594
595 res14 <- run_candle_hammer(fil,0,nm)
596
597 # latex table
598 dat <- res14[,c(1,3,5,6,7)]
599 dig <- 2
600 cap = c('Results from a system based on the Hammer and Inverted Hammer
          candlestick patterns.',
          'Results from a system based on the Hammer and Inverted Hammer
          candlestick patterns')
601
602 lab = 'tab:hammer_results'
603 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_hammer.tex'
604 inclrnam=FALSE
605 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
606

```

```

607 # plus aroon
608 run_candle_hammer_aroon <- function(fil,SLoss,nm){
609   df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
610   for(i in 1:length(fil)){
611     Mkt <- read.csv(fil[i],stringsAsFactors = FALSE)
612     Mkt <- Mkt[,c(1,2,3,4,5)]
613     Mkt$Date <- as.POSIXct(Mkt$Date,format='%d/%m/%Y')
614     Mkt_xts <- xts(Mkt[,c(2,3,4,5)],Mkt$Date)
615     hh <- as.data.frame(CSPHammer(Mkt_xts))
616     hi <- as.data.frame(CSPInvertedHammer(Mkt_xts))
617     Mkt <- cbind(Mkt,hh)
618     Mkt <- cbind(Mkt,hi)
619     ar <- aroon(Mkt$Close,n=20)
620     Mkt <- cbind(Mkt,ar)
621     a <- candle_hammer_aroon(Mkt,SLoss, nm[i])
622     df10 <- rbind(df10,a)
623   }
624   df.name <- names(a)
625   names(df10) <- df.name
626   df10 <- df10[-1,]
627   return(df10)
628 }
629
630 res14a <- run_candle_hammer_aroon(fil,0,nm)
631
632 # latex table
633 dat <- res14a[,c(1,3,5,6,7)]
634 dig <- 2
635 cap = c('Results from a system based on the Hammer and Inverted Hammer
        candlestick patterns occurring in a downtrend as defined by the aroon value.'
        ,
        'Results from a system based on the Hammer and Inverted Hammer
        candlestick patterns occurring in a downtrend')
636
637 lab = 'tab:hammer_aroon_results'
638 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_hammer_d_trend.tex'
639 inclrnam=FALSE
640 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
641
642 # -----
643 # ----- Engulfing Candlestick -----
644
645 run_candle_engulf <- function(fil,SLoss,nm){
646   df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
647   for(i in 1:length(fil)){
648     Mkt <- read.csv(fil[i],stringsAsFactors = FALSE)
649     #create xts obj
650     Mkt$Date <- as.POSIXct(Mkt$Date,format='%d/%m/%Y')
651     Mkt_xts <- xts(Mkt[,c(2,3,4,5)],Mkt$Date)
652     en <- as.data.frame(CSPEngulfing(Mkt_xts))
653     #use data frame again
654     Mkt <- cbind(Mkt,en)
655     a <- candle_engulf(Mkt,SLoss, nm[i])
656     df10 <- rbind(df10,a)
657   }
658   df.name <- names(a)

```

```

659   names(df10) <- df.name
660   df10 <- df10[-1,]
661   return(df10)
662 }
663
664 res15 <- run_candle_engulf(fil,0,nm)
665
666 # latex table
667 dat <- res15[,std6]
668 dig <- 2
669 cap = c('Results from a system based on the Engulfing candlestick pattern.',
670         'Results from a system based on the Engulfing candlestick pattern')
671 lab = 'tab:engulf_results'
672 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_englf.tex'
673 inclrnam=FALSE
674 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
675
676
677 # with Aroon
678 run_candle_engulf_aroon <- function(fil,SLoss,nm){
679   df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
680   for(i in 1:length(fil)){
681     Mkt <- read.csv(fil[i],stringsAsFactors = FALSE)
682     #create xts obj
683     Mkt$Date <- as.POSIXct(Mkt$Date,format='%d/%m/%Y')
684     Mkt_xts <- xts(Mkt[,c(2,3,4,5)],Mkt$Date)
685     en <- as.data.frame(CSPEngulfing(Mkt_xts))
686     #use data frame again
687     Mkt <- cbind(Mkt,en)
688     ar <- aroon(Mkt$Close,n=20)
689     Mkt <- cbind(Mkt,ar)
690     a <- candle_engulf_aroon(Mkt,SLoss, nm[i])
691     df10 <- rbind(df10,a)
692   }
693   df.name <- names(a)
694   names(df10) <- df.name
695   df10 <- df10[-1,]
696   return(df10)
697 }
698
699 res15a <- run_candle_engulf_aroon(fil,0,nm)
700
701 # latex table
702 dat <- res15a[,std6]
703 dig <- 2
704 cap = c('Results from a system based on the Engulfing candlestick pattern in a
705         trending market.',
706         'Results from a system based on the Engulfing candlestick pattern in a
707         trending market')
708 lab = 'tab:engulf_aroon_results'
709 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_englf_aroon.tex'
710 inclrnam=FALSE
711 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
712
713 # -----

```

```

712 # ----- Doji -----
713 run_candle_doji_aroon <- function(fil,SLoss,nm){
714   df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
715   for(i in 1:length(fil)){
716     Mkt <- read.csv(fil[i],stringsAsFactors = FALSE)
717     #create xts obj
718     Mkt$Date <- as.POSIXct(Mkt$Date,format='%d/%m/%Y')
719     Mkt_xts <- xts(Mkt[,c(2,3,4,5)],Mkt$Date)
720     dj <- as.data.frame(CSPDoji(Mkt_xts))
721     #back to data fram
722     Mkt <- cbind(Mkt,dj)
723     ar <- aroon(Mkt$Close,n=20)
724     Mkt <- cbind(Mkt,ar)
725     a <- candle_doji_aroon(Mkt,SLoss, nm[i])
726     df10 <- rbind(df10,a)
727   }
728   df.name <- names(a)
729   names(df10) <- df.name
730   df10 <- df10[-1,]
731   return(df10)
732 }
733
734 res16 <- run_candle_doji_aroon(fil,0,nm)
735
736 # latex table
737 dat <- res16[,std6]
738 dig <- 2
739 cap = c('Results from a system based on the Doji candlestick pattern in a
740         trending market.',
741         'Results from a system based on the Doji candlestick pattern in a
742         trending market')
741 lab = 'tab:doji_aroon_results'
742 filename = '../Tables/chp_ta_doji.tex'
743 inclrnam=FALSE
744 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
745
746 # END

```

RCode/Chapter4.R

## A.1.2 Naive Systems

### A.1.2.1 Naive Long System

<appA:NaiveLong>

```

1 NaiveLongSystem <- function(Mkt, SLoss, MktName){
2   # Calculates the profit/loss from simply trading long.
3   #
4   #   Mkt: market data
5   #   SLoss: stop loss
6   #   MktName: market's name for print out
7   # Returns:
8   #   results vector.

```



```

9
10 results <- createResultsVector(MktName, SLoss)
11
12 # Buy Long
13 Mkt$Long <- Mkt$Close - Mkt$Open
14 results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
15 #Adj for SLoss
16 if (SLoss < 0) {
17   Mkt$Long <- ifelse((Mkt$Low-Mkt$Open) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Long)
18   results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
19 }
20
21 Stats <- calcStats(Mkt$Long)
22 results[5:7] <- Stats
23
24 return(results)
25 }

```

RCode/NaiveLongSystem.R

### A.1.2.2 Naive Long System trading close to close

(appA:NaiveLong\_2)

```

1 NaiveLongSystem2 <- function(Mkt, SLoss, MktName){
2   # Calculates the profit/loss from simply trading long each day.
3   # Opening price is previous day's close price.
4   #
5   # Args:
6   #   Mkt: market data
7   #   SLoss: stop loss
8   #   MktName: name of market data
9   # Returns:
10  #   results vector.
11
12  results <- createResultsVector(MktName, SLoss)
13
14  Mkt$prevCl <- c(NA, Mkt$Close[ - length(Mkt$Close) ])
15
16  # Buy Long
17  Mkt$Long <- Mkt$Close - Mkt$prevCl
18  results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
19  #Adj for SLoss
20  if (SLoss < 0) {
21    Mkt$Long <- ifelse((Mkt$Low-Mkt$Open) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Long)
22    results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
23  }
24
25  Stats <- calcStats(Mkt$Long)
26  results[5:7] <- Stats
27
28  return(results)
29 }

```

RCode/NaiveLongSystem2.R

## A.1.2.3 Naive Reversing System

(appA:NaiveReversePrev)

```

1 NaiveReversePrev <- function(Mkt, SLoss, MktName){
2   # Calculates the profit/loss from trading according to a naive idea of trading
   # in the opposite direction to the previous day.
3   #
4   #   Mkt: market data
5   #   SLoss: stop loss
6   #   MktName: market's name for print out
7   # Returns:
8   #   results vector
9
10  results <- createResultsVector(MktName, SLoss)
11
12  Mkt$pl <- Mkt$Close - Mkt$Open
13  Mkt$prevPL <- c( NA, Mkt$pl[ - length(Mkt$pl) ] )
14
15  # Trade Long
16  Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$prevPL<0,Mkt$Close-Mkt$Open,NA)
17  results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
18  #Adj for SLoss
19  if (SLoss < 0) {
20    Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$prevPL<0,
21                      ifelse((Mkt$Low-Mkt$Open) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Long),
22                      Mkt$Long)
23
24    results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
25  }
26
27  # Trade Short
28  Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$prevPL>0,Mkt$Open-Mkt$Close,NA)
29  results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
30  #Adj for SLoss
31  if (SLoss < 0) {
32    Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$prevPL>0,
33                      ifelse((Mkt$Open-Mkt$High) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Short),
34                      Mkt$Short)
35    results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
36  }
37
38  Stats <- calcStats(Mkt$Long)
39  results[5:7] <- Stats
40
41  Stats <- calcStats(Mkt$Short)
42  results[8:10] <- Stats
43
44  return(results)
45 }

```

RCode/NaiveReversePrev.R

### A.1.3 Trend Detection Systems

#### A.1.3.1 SMA

(appA:SMA\_sys)

```

1 BaseSystem1SMA <- function(Mkt, sma, SLoss, MktName){
2   # Calculates the profit/loss from trading according to SMA.
3   #
4   #   Mkt: market data
5   #   SLoss: stop loss
6   #   MktName: market's name for print out
7   # Returns:
8   #   profit/loss from trading according to SMA.
9
10  results <- createResultsVector(MktName, SLoss)
11
12  sma.value <- SMA(Mkt["Open"], sma) #create sma vector
13  Mkt <- cbind(Mkt, sma.value)       #add sma vector as new col
14
15  # Trade Long
16  Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$Open > Mkt$sma.value, Mkt$Close - Mkt$Open, NA)
17  results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=T))
18  if (SLoss < 0) {
19    Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$Open > Mkt$sma.value,
20                      ifelse((Mkt$Low-Mkt$Open) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Long),
21                      Mkt$Long)
22    results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=T))
23  }
24
25  # Trade Short
26  Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$Open < Mkt$sma.value, Mkt$Open - Mkt$Close, NA)
27  results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=T))
28  if (SLoss < 0) {
29    Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$Open < Mkt$sma.value,
30                      ifelse((Mkt$Open-Mkt$High) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$
31                      Short),
32                      Mkt$Short)
33    results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=T))
34  }
35
36  #calculate Long results
37  results[5:7] <- calcStats(Mkt$Long)
38
39  #calculate Short results
40  results[8:10] <- calcStats(Mkt$Short)
41
42  names(results)[11] <- "SMA"
43
44  return(results)
45 }
```

RCode/SMA\_sys.R

### A.1.3.2 MACD - trend indicator

```

1 MACD_XO <- function(Mkt, SLoss, MktName){
2   # MACD cross-over system.
3   #
4   # Args:
5   #   Mkt: market data
6   #   SLoss: stop loss
7   #   MktName: market's name for print out
8   # Returns:
9   #   results vector.
10
11  results <- createResultsVector(MktName, SLoss)
12
13  # Trade Long
14  Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$macd>Mkt$signal, Mkt$Close-Mkt$Open, NA)
15  results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
16  #Adj for SLoss
17  if (SLoss < 0) {
18    Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$macd>Mkt$signal,
19                      ifelse((Mkt$Low-Mkt$Open) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Long),
20                      Mkt$Long)
21    results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
22  }
23
24  # Trade Short
25  Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$macd<Mkt$signal, Mkt$Open-Mkt$Close, NA)
26  results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
27  #Adj for SLoss
28  if (SLoss < 0) {
29    Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$macd<Mkt$signal,
30                      ifelse((Mkt$Open-Mkt$High) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Short),
31                      Mkt$Short)
32    results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
33  }
34
35  #calculate Long results
36  results[5:7] <- calcStats(Mkt$Long)
37
38  #calculate Short results
39  results[8:10] <- calcStats(Mkt$Short)
40
41  return(results)
42 }

```

RCode/MACD\_XO.R

<appA:macd\_xov>

### A.1.3.3 Aroon trend indicator

<appA:aroon>

```

1 aroon_sys <- function(Mkt, SLoss, MktName){
2   # uses Aroon indicator to trigger trades
3   #
4   # Args:

```

```

5  # Mkt:      Data to run system on
6  # SLoss:    Stop Loss (if 0 not used)
7  # MktName:  Name of market
8  # Returns:
9  # results vector.
10
11 results <- createResultsVector(MktName, SLoss)
12 # Trade Long
13 Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$aroonUp >= 70, Mkt$Close-Mkt$Open, NA)
14 results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
15 #Adj for SLoss
16 if (SLoss < 0) {
17   Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$aroonUp >= 70,
18                     ifelse((Mkt$Low-Mkt$Open) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Long),
19                     Mkt$Long)
20   results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
21 }
22
23 # Trade Short
24 Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$aroonDn >= 70, Mkt$Open-Mkt$Close, NA)
25 results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
26 #Adj for SLoss
27 if (SLoss < 0) {
28   Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$aroonDn >= 70,
29                     ifelse((Mkt$Open-Mkt$High) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Short),
30                     Mkt$Short)
31   results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
32 }
33
34 #calculate Long results
35 results[5:7] <- calcStats(Mkt$Long)
36
37 #calculate Short results
38 results[8:10] <- calcStats(Mkt$Short)
39
40 return(results)
41 }

```

RCode/Aroon.R

## A.1.4 Market Reversal Indicator

### A.1.4.1 SAR reversal indicator

<appA:sar>

```

1 sar_sys <- function(Mkt, SLoss, MktName){
2   # uses Parabolic SAR indicator to trigger trades
3   #
4   # Args:
5   # Mkt:      Data
6   # SLoss:    Stop Loss (if 0 not used)
7   # MktName:  Name of market
8   # Returns:

```

```

9   #   results vector.
10
11  results <- createResultsVector(MktName, SLoss)
12
13  Mkt$prevsar <- c( NA, Mkt$sar[ - length(Mkt$sar) ])
14
15  # Trade Long
16  Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$Open > Mkt$prevsar, Mkt$Close-Mkt$Open, NA)
17  results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
18  #Adj for SLoss
19  if (SLoss < 0) {
20    Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$Open > Mkt$prevsar,
21                      ifelse((Mkt$Low-Mkt$Open) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Long),
22                      Mkt$Long)
23    results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
24  }
25
26  # Trade Short
27  Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$Open < Mkt$prevsar, Mkt$Open-Mkt$Close, NA)
28  results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
29  if (SLoss < 0) {
30    Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$Open < Mkt$prevsar,
31                      ifelse((Mkt$Open-Mkt$High) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Short),
32                      Mkt$Short)
33    results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
34  }
35
36  #calculate Long results
37  results[5:7] <- calcStats(Mkt$Long)
38
39  #calculate Short results
40  results[8:10] <- calcStats(Mkt$Short)
41
42  return(results)
43 }

```

RCode/SAR.R

#### A.1.4.2 MACD as Reversal Indicator

(appA:macd\_ob)

```

1  MACD_OB <- function(Mkt, SLoss, MktName, lw, up){
2    # MACD over-bought/sold system.
3    #
4    # Args:
5    #   Mkt: market data
6    #   SLoss: stop loss
7    #   MktName: market's name for print out
8    #   lw: value of MACD that signals end of bear runs and rev
9    #   up: value of MACD that signals end of bull runs and rev
10   # Returns:
11   #   results vector.
12
13   results <- createResultsVector(MktName, SLoss)

```

```

14
15 # Trade Long
16 Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$macd < lw, Mkt$Close-Mkt$Open, NA)
17 results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
18 #Adj for SLoss
19 if (SLoss < 0) {
20     Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$macd < lw,
21                         ifelse((Mkt$Low-Mkt$Open) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Long),
22                         Mkt$Long)
23     results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
24 }
25
26 # Trade Short
27 Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$macd > up, Mkt$Open-Mkt$Close, NA)
28 results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
29 if (SLoss < 0) {
30     Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$macd > up,
31                         ifelse((Mkt$Open-Mkt$High) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Short),
32                         Mkt$Short)
33     results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
34 }
35
36 Stats <- calcStats(Mkt$Long)
37 results[5:7] <- Stats
38
39 Stats <- calcStats(Mkt$Short)
40 results[8:10] <- Stats
41
42 return(results)
43 }

```

RCode/MACD-OB.R

### A.1.4.3 Stochastic reversal indicator

<appA:stoch>

```

1 stoch_sys <- function(Mkt, SLoss, MktName){
2   # Trading system using Stochastic Oscillator to trigger trades
3   #
4   # Args:
5   #   Mkt:      Data
6   #   SLoss:    Stop Loss (if 0 not used)
7   #   MktName:  Name of market
8   # Returns:
9   #   results vector.
10
11   results <- createResultsVector(MktName, SLoss)
12
13   Mkt$PrevfastD <- c( NA, Mkt$fastD[ - length(Mkt$fastD) ])
14   Mkt$PrevslowD <- c( NA, Mkt$slowD[ - length(Mkt$slowD) ])
15
16   # Trade Long
17   Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$PrevfastD > Mkt$PrevslowD, Mkt$Close-Mkt$Open, NA)
18   results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))

```

```

19 #Adj for SLoss
20 if (SLoss < 0) {
21     Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$PrevfastD > Mkt$PrevslowD,
22                       ifelse((Mkt$Low-Mkt$Open) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Long),
23                       Mkt$Long)
24     results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
25 }
26
27 # Trade Short
28 Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$PrevfastD < Mkt$PrevslowD, Mkt$Open-Mkt$Close, NA)
29 results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
30 #Adj for SLoss
31 if (SLoss < 0) {
32     Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$PrevfastD < Mkt$PrevslowD,
33                       ifelse((Mkt$Open-Mkt$High) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Short),
34                       Mkt$Short)
35     results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
36 }
37
38 Stats <- calcStats(Mkt$Long)
39 results[5:7] <- Stats
40
41 Stats <- calcStats(Mkt$Short)
42 results[8:10] <- Stats
43
44 return(results)
45 }

```

RCode/Stoch.R

#### A.1.4.4 Rate of Change(ROC)

<appA:roc>

```

1 roc_sys <- function(Mkt, SLoss, MktName, lw, up){
2   # Rate of Change (ROC) system.
3   #
4   # Args:
5   #   Mkt: market data
6   #   SLoss: stop loss
7   #   MktName: market's name for print out
8   #   lw: value of MACD that signals end of bear runs and rev
9   #   up: value of MACD that signals end of bull runs and rev
10  #
11  # Returns:
12  #   results vector.
13
14  results <- createResultsVector(MktName, SLoss)
15
16  Mkt$prevROC <- c( NA, Mkt$roc[ - length(Mkt$roc) ] )
17
18  # Trade Long
19  Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$prevROC < lw, Mkt$Close-Mkt$Open, NA)
20  results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
21  #Adj for SLoss

```



```

22   if (SLoss < 0) {
23     Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$prevROC < lw,
24                       ifelse((Mkt$Low-Mkt$Open) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Long),
25                       Mkt$Long)
26     results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
27   }
28
29   # Trade Short
30   Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$prevROC > up, Mkt$Open-Mkt$Close, NA)
31   results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
32   #Adj for SLoss
33   if (SLoss < 0) {
34     Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$prevROC > up,
35                       ifelse((Mkt$Open-Mkt$High) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Short),
36                       Mkt$Short)
37     results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
38   }
39
40   Stats <- calcStats(Mkt$Long)
41   results[5:7] <- Stats
42
43   Stats <- calcStats(Mkt$Short)
44   results[8:10] <- Stats
45
46   return(results)
47 }

```

RCode/ROC.R

## A.1.5 Break Out Systems

### A.1.5.1 Break Out

<appA:bout\_sys>

```

1 BaseSystem2Bout <- function(Mkt, SLoss, MktName){
2   # Trading system based on the break out of the previous day's high/low value.
3   #
4   #   Mkt: market data
5   #   SLoss: stop loss
6   #   MktName: market's name for print out
7   # Returns:
8   #   results vector.
9
10  results <- createResultsVector(MktName, SLoss)
11
12  Mkt$prevHigh <- c( NA, Mkt$High[ - length(Mkt$High) ] )
13  Mkt$prevLow <- c( NA, Mkt$Low[ - length(Mkt$Low) ] )
14
15  # Break out high
16  Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$High>Mkt$prevHigh, Mkt$Close-Mkt$prevHigh, NA)
17  results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
18  #Adj for SLoss
19  if (SLoss < 0) {

```

```

20     Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$High>Mkt$prevHigh,
21                       ifelse((Mkt$Low-Mkt$Open) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Long),
22                       Mkt$Long)
23     results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
24   }
25
26   # Break out low
27   Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$Low<Mkt$prevLow,Mkt$prevLow-Mkt$Close,NA)
28   results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
29   if (SLoss < 0) {
30     Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$Low<Mkt$prevLow,
31                       ifelse((Mkt$Open-Mkt$High) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Short),
32                       Mkt$Short)
33     results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
34   }
35
36   Stats <- calcStats(Mkt$Long)
37   results[5:7] <- Stats
38
39   Stats <- calcStats(Mkt$Short)
40   results[8:10] <- Stats
41
42   return(results)
43 }

```

RCode/Bout\_sys.R

### A.1.5.2 90% Quantile

<appA:bout\_Quant90>

```

1 BaseSystem3Quant902 <- function(Mkt, SLoss, MktName){
2   # Calculates the profit/loss from trading a breakout of a 90% quantile move.
3   #
4   #   Mkt: market data
5   #   SLoss: stop loss
6   #   MktName: market's name for print out
7   # Returns:
8   #   results vector.
9
10  results <- createResultsVector(MktName, SLoss)
11
12  Mkt$OH <- Mkt$High - Mkt$Open
13  Mkt$OL <- Mkt$Open - Mkt$Low
14  Mkt$mn <- ifelse(Mkt$OH>Mkt$OL,Mkt$OL,Mkt$OH)
15  qq <- quantile(Mkt$mn, probs=0.90)
16
17  # Trade Long
18  Mkt$Long <- ifelse((Mkt$High - Mkt$Open) > qq, Mkt$Close - (Mkt$Open + qq), NA)
19  results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
20  #Adj for SLoss
21  if (SLoss < 0) {
22    Mkt$Long <- ifelse((Mkt$High - Mkt$Open) > qq,
23                      ifelse((Mkt$Low-Mkt$Open) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Long),
24                      Mkt$Long)

```

```

25     results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
26 }
27
28 # Trade Short
29 Mkt$Short <- ifelse((Mkt$Open - Mkt$Low) > qq, (Mkt$Open - qq) - Mkt$Close, NA)
30 results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
31 #Adj for SLoss
32 if (SLoss < 0){
33     Mkt$Short <- ifelse((Mkt$Open - Mkt$Low) > qq,
34                         ifelse((Mkt$Open-Mkt$High) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Short),
35                         Mkt$Short)
36     results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
37 }
38
39 Stats <- calcStats(Mkt$Long)
40 results[5:7] <- Stats
41
42 Stats <- calcStats(Mkt$Short)
43 results[8:10] <- Stats
44
45 return(results)
46 }

```

RCode/Quant90\_sys.R

## A.1.6 Candlestick Systems

### A.1.6.1 Hammer and Inverted Hammer Candlestick Pattern

(appA:Hammer)

```

1 candle_hammer <- function(Mkt, SLoss, MktName){
2     # Trading system based on the Hammer candlestick pattern.
3     #
4     # Mkt: market data
5     # SLoss: stop loss
6     # MktName: market's name for print out
7     # Returns:
8     # results vector.
9
10    results <- createResultsVector(MktName, SLoss)
11
12    Mkt$prev_Hammer <- c( NA, Mkt$Hammer[ - length(Mkt$Hammer) ] )
13    Mkt$prev_Inv_Hammer <- c( NA, Mkt$InvertedHammer[ - length(Mkt$InvertedHammer
14    ) ] )
15
16    # Trade Long
17    Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$prev_Hammer==TRUE | Mkt$prev_Inv_Hammer==TRUE, Mkt$Close
18    -Mkt$Open, NA)
19    results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
20    #Adj for SLoss
21    if (SLoss < 0) {
22        Mkt$Long <- ifelse((Mkt$prev_Hammer==TRUE | Mkt$prev_Inv_Hammer==TRUE) > 0,
23                            ifelse((Mkt$Low-Mkt$Open) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Long),

```

```

22             Mkt$Long)
23     results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
24 }
25
26 Stats <- calcStats(Mkt$Long)
27 results[5:7] <- Stats
28
29 return(results)
30 }

```

RCode/Candle\_Hammer.R

### A.1.6.2 Hammer and Inverted Hammer Candlestick Pattern in a Trending Market

(appA:Hammer\_aroon)

```

1 candle_hammer_aroon <- function(Mkt, SLoss, MktName){
2   # Trading system based on the Hammer candlestick pattern occurring in a
   trending market.
3   #
4   # Mkt: market data
5   # SLoss: stop loss
6   # MktName: market's name for print out
7   # Returns:
8   # results vector.
9
10  results <- createResultsVector(MktName, SLoss)
11
12  #browser()
13  Mkt$prev_Aroon_UP <- c( NA, Mkt$aroonUp[ - length(Mkt$aroonUp) ] )
14  Mkt$prev_Aroon_DN <- c( NA, Mkt$aroonDn[ - length(Mkt$aroonDn) ] )
15  Mkt$prev_Hammer <- c( NA, Mkt$Hammer[ - length(Mkt$Hammer) ] )
16  Mkt$prev_Inv_Hammer <- c( NA, Mkt$InvertedHammer[ - length(Mkt$InvertedHammer
   ) ] )
17
18  # Trade Long
19  Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$prev_Aroon_DN >= 70, ifelse(Mkt$prev_Hammer==T | Mkt$
   prev_Inv_Hammer==T, Mkt$Close-Mkt$Open, NA) ,NA)
20
21  results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
22
23  #Adj for SLoss
24  if (SLoss < 0) {
25    Mkt$Long <- ifelse((Mkt$High - Mkt$Open) > 0,
26                      ifelse((Mkt$Low-Mkt$Open) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Long),
27                      Mkt$Long)
28    results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
29  }
30
31  Stats <- calcStats(Mkt$Long)
32  results[5:7] <- Stats
33
34  return(results)
35 }

```

RCode/Candle\_Hammer\_aroon.R

## A.1.6.3 Engulfing Candlestick Pattern

```

(appA:Engulf)
1 candle_engulf <- function(Mkt, SLoss, MktName){
2   # Trading system based on the Engulfing candlestick pattern.
3   #
4   #   Mkt: market data
5   #   SLoss: stop loss
6   #   MktName: market's name for print out
7   # Returns:
8   #   results vector.
9
10  results <- createResultsVector(MktName, SLoss)
11
12  Mkt$prev_Bull_Engulf <- c( NA, Mkt$Bull.Engulfing[ - length(Mkt$Bull.Engulfing)
13    ] )
14  Mkt$prev_Bear_Engulf <- c( NA, Mkt$Bear.Engulfing[ - length(Mkt$Bear.Engulfing)
15    ] )
16
17  # Trade Long
18  Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$prev_Bull_Engulf==TRUE, Mkt$Close-Mkt$Open, NA)
19  results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
20 # #Adj for SLoss
21 if (SLoss < 0) {
22   Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$prev_Bull_Engulf == TRUE,
23     ifelse( (Mkt$Low-Mkt$Open) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Long),
24     Mkt$Long)
25   results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
26 }
27
28 # Trade Short
29 Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$prev_Bear_Engulf == TRUE, Mkt$Open-Mkt$Close, NA)
30 results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
31 #Adj for SLoss
32 if (SLoss < 0) {
33   Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$prev_Bear_Engulf == TRUE,
34     ifelse((Mkt$Open-Mkt$High) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Short),
35     Mkt$Short)
36   results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
37 }
38
39 Stats <- calcStats(Mkt$Long)
40 results[5:7] <- Stats
41
42 Stats <- calcStats(Mkt$Short)
43 results[8:10] <- Stats
44
45 return(results)
46 }

```

RCode/Candle\_Engulf.R

## A.1.6.4 Engulfing Candlestick Pattern in a Trending Market

&lt;appA:Engulf\_aroon&gt;

```

1 candle_engulf_aroon <- function(Mkt, SLoss, MktName){
2   # Trading system based on the Engulfing candlestick pattern occurring in a
   trending market.
3   #
4   #   Mkt: market data
5   #   SLoss: stop loss
6   #   MktName: market's name for print out
7   # Returns:
8   #   results vector.
9
10  results <- createResultsVector(MktName, SLoss)
11
12  #browser()
13  Mkt$prev_Aroon_UP <- c( NA, Mkt$aroonUp[ - length(Mkt$aroonUp) ] )
14  Mkt$prev_Aroon_DN <- c( NA, Mkt$aroonDn[ - length(Mkt$aroonDn) ] )
15  Mkt$prev_Bull_Engulf   <- c( NA, Mkt$Bull.Engulfing[ - length(Mkt$Bull.
   Engulfing) ] )
16  Mkt$prev_Bear_Engulf   <- c( NA, Mkt$Bear.Engulfing[ - length(Mkt$Bear.
   Engulfing) ] )
17
18  # Trade Long
19  Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$prev_Aroon_DN >= 70, ifelse(Mkt$prev_Bull_Engulf==T, Mkt
   $Close-Mkt$Open, NA) ,NA)
20
21  results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
22
23  #Adj for SLoss
24  if (SLoss < 0) {
25    Mkt$Long <- ifelse((Mkt$High - Mkt$Open) > 0,
26                      ifelse((Mkt$Low-Mkt$Open) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Long),
27                      Mkt$Long)
28    results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
29  }
30
31  #Trade Short
32  Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$prev_Aroon_UP >= 70, ifelse(Mkt$prev_Bull_Engulf==T,
   Mkt$Close-Mkt$Open, NA) ,NA)
33  results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
34  #Adj for SLoss
35  if (SLoss < 0){
36    Mkt$Short <- ifelse((Mkt$Open - Mkt$Low) > 0,
37                      ifelse((Mkt$Open-Mkt$High) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Short),
38                      Mkt$Short)
39    results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
40  }
41
42  Stats <- calcStats(Mkt$Long)
43  results[5:7] <- Stats
44
45  Stats <- calcStats(Mkt$Short)
46  results[8:10] <- Stats
47
48  return(results)

```

49 }

RCode/Candle\_Engulf\_aroon.R

### A.1.6.5 Doji Candlestick Pattern in a Trending Market

(appA:Doji\_aroon)

```

1 candle_doji_aroon <- function(Mkt, SLoss, MktName){
2   # Trading system based on the Doji candlestick pattern occurring in a trending
   market.
3   #
4   #   Mkt: market data
5   #   SLoss: stop loss
6   #   MktName: market's name for print out
7   #
8   # Returns:
9   #   results vector.
10
11  results <- createResultsVector(MktName, SLoss)
12
13  #browser()
14  Mkt$prev_Aroon_UP <- c( NA, Mkt$aroonUp[ - length(Mkt$aroonUp) ] )
15  Mkt$prev_Aroon_DN <- c( NA, Mkt$aroonDn[ - length(Mkt$aroonDn) ] )
16  Mkt$prev_Doji <- c( NA, Mkt$Doji[ - length(Mkt$Doji) ] )
17  Mkt$prev_Dragonfly <- c( NA, Mkt$DragonflyDoji[ - length(Mkt$DragonflyDoji) ]
   )
18  Mkt$prev_Gravestone <- c( NA, Mkt$GravestoneDoji[ - length(Mkt$GravestoneDoji
   ) ] )
19
20  # Trade Long
21  Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$prev_Aroon_DN >= 70, ifelse(Mkt$prev_Doji==TRUE | Mkt$
   prev_Dragonfly == TRUE, Mkt$Close-Mkt$Open, NA) ,NA)
22  results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
23
24  #Adj for SLoss
25  if (SLoss < 0) {
26    Mkt$Long <- ifelse((Mkt$High - Mkt$Open) > 0,
27                      ifelse((Mkt$Low-Mkt$Open) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Long),
28                      Mkt$Long)
29    results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
30  }
31
32  #Trade Short
33  Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$prev_Aroon_UP >= 70, ifelse(Mkt$prev_Doji==TRUE | Mkt$
   prev_Gravestone == TRUE, Mkt$Close-Mkt$Open, NA) ,NA)
34  results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
35  #Adj for SLoss
36  if (SLoss < 0){
37    Mkt$Short <- ifelse((Mkt$Open - Mkt$Low) > 0,
38                      ifelse((Mkt$Open-Mkt$High) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Short),
39                      Mkt$Short)
40    results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
41  }
42

```

```

43   Stats <- calcStats(Mkt$Long)
44   results[5:7] <- Stats
45
46   Stats <- calcStats(Mkt$Short)
47   results[8:10] <- Stats
48
49   return(results)
50 }

```

RCode/Candle\_Doji\_aaron.R

## A.2 Chapter 5

The R code used to generate the results and tables in Chapter 5 is shown in listing A.2.

This is followed by the individual files containing the algorithms used in the chapter.

(appA:Chp5\_R)

```

1 # Chapter 5 - test
2 setwd("D:/Allan/DropBox/MSc/Dissertation/Thesis/RCode")
3
4 # libraries
5 library(forecast)
6 library(xtable)
7
8 #source
9 source("../RCode/Utils.R")
10 source("../RCode/ts_1.R")
11 source("../RCode/ts_2.R")
12 source("../RCode/ts_3.R")
13 source("../RCode/ts_3a.R")
14 source("../RCode/ts_4.R")
15 source("../RCode//NaiveReversePrev.R")
16
17 fil <- c("../Data/Dax_2000_d.csv",
18         "../Data/CAC_2000_d.csv",
19         "../Data/F100_2000_d.csv",
20         "../Data/Dow_2000_d.csv",
21         "../Data/N225_2000_d.csv",
22         "../Data/Oz_2000.csv")
23 #nm <- c("Dax", "CAC", "FTSE", "Dow", "Nikkei", "AORD")
24
25 # Add Naive follow prev for comparison purposes
26 # data frame will be fed into sub_df
27
28 df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
29 NaiveRev <- run_NaiveReversePrev(fil, 0, nm)
30
31 # -----
32 # ----- Base Systems
33 # Mkt <- read.csv("../Data/Dax_2000_d.csv")
34 # nrow(Mkt)
35 # Mkt$Date[2999]
36 # Mkt_ts <- ts(Mkt$Close)

```



```

37 # #Mkt_ts <- ts(Mkt$Close,frequency=252, start=c(2000,1))
38 # #Mkt_train <- window(Mkt_ts, start=2000, end=2009.99)
39 # Mkt_train <- window(Mkt_ts, end=2999.99)
40 # Mkt_test <- window(Mkt_ts, start=3000)
41 #
42 # # a.build the mean model
43 # mean_model <- meanf(Mkt_train, h=5)
44 # a <- accuracy(mean_model, Mkt_test) #out of sample
45 # rownames(a) <- c('Mean Training Set', 'Mean Test Set')
46 #
47 # # b. build the mean model
48 # naive_model <- naive(Mkt_train, h=5)
49 # b <- accuracy(naive_model, Mkt_test) #out of sample
50 # rownames(b) <- c('Naive Training Set', 'Naive Test Set')
51 #
52 #
53 # # c. build the drift model
54 # drift_model <- rwf(Mkt_train,drift=TRUE,h=5)
55 # c <- accuracy(drift_model, Mkt_test) #out of sample
56 # rownames(c) <- c('Drift Training Set', 'Drift Test Set')
57 #
58 # # combine results
59 # d <- rbind(a,b,c)
60 #
61 # # produce latex table
62 # dat <- d[,c(2,3,4,5,6)]
63 # dig <- 0
64 # cap <- c("Mean, Naive and Drift methods applied to
65 #         to the Dax.,"Simple forecasting methods.")
66 # lab = 'tab:chp_ts:sma'
67 # filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_sma.tex'
68 # inclrnam=TRUE
69 # print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
70 #
71 # # --- plot all three base systems on Dow
72 # savepdf("chp_ts_dax1")
73 # Mkt_act <- window(Mkt_ts, start=3020, end=3200)
74 # plot.ts(Mkt_train,
75 #         main="Simple Forecasting Methods",
76 #         xlab="Days since 2000", ylab="Dax Closing Price",
77 #         xlim=c(2, 3200))
78 # lines(meanf(Mkt_train, h=350) $mean, col=4)
79 # lines(rwf(Mkt_train,h=350)$mean,col=2)
80 # lines(rwf(Mkt_train,drift=TRUE,h=350)$mean,col=3)
81 # legend("bottomright",lty=1,col=c(4,2,3),
82 #       legend=c("Mean method","Naive method","Drift method"))
83 # dev.off() #savepdf end
84 #
85 # # --- plot all three base systems on Dow PLUS actual data
86 # savepdf("chp_ts_dax1_plus_act_data")
87 # Mkt_act <- window(Mkt_ts, start=3020, end=3200)
88 # plot.ts(Mkt_train,
89 #         main="Simple Forecasting Methods",
90 #         xlab="Days since 2000", ylab="Dax Closing Price",
91 #         xlim=c(2, 3200))

```

```

92 # lines(meanf(Mkt_train, h=350) $mean, col=4)
93 # lines(rwf(Mkt_train,h=350)$mean,col=2)
94 # lines(rwf(Mkt_train,drift=TRUE,h=350)$mean,col=3)
95 # legend("bottomright",lty=1,col=c(4,2,3),
96 #       legend=c("Mean method","Naive method","Drift method"))
97 # lines(Mkt_act, col=6)
98 # dev.off() #savepdf end
99
100 # ----- NOT USED AT MO -----
101 # plot diff range
102 # Mkt_test2 <- window(Mkt_ts, start=1510, end=1600)
103 # Mkt_train2 <- window(Mkt_ts, start=1000, end=1500)
104 # plot.ts(Mkt_train2,
105 #         main="Dax over 300 Days",
106 #         xlab="Day", ylab="",
107 #         xlim=c(1000, 1600),
108 #         ylim=c(3500, 6350))
109 # lines(meanf(Mkt_train2, h=150) $mean, col=4)
110 # lines(rwf(Mkt_train2,h=150)$mean,col=2)
111 # lines(rwf(Mkt_train2,drift=TRUE,h=150)$mean,col=3)
112 # legend("topleft",lty=1,col=c(4,2,3),
113 #       legend=c("Mean method","Naive method","Drift method"))
114 #
115 # # plot diff range PLUS actual data
116 # Mkt_test2 <- window(Mkt_ts, start=1510, end=1600)
117 # Mkt_train2 <- window(Mkt_ts, start=1000, end=1500)
118 # plot.ts(Mkt_train2,
119 #         main="Dax over 300 Days",
120 #         xlab="Day", ylab="",
121 #         xlim=c(1000, 1600),
122 #         ylim=c(3500, 6350))
123 # lines(meanf(Mkt_train2, h=150) $mean, col=4)
124 # lines(rwf(Mkt_train2,h=150)$mean,col=2)
125 # lines(rwf(Mkt_train2,drift=TRUE,h=150)$mean,col=3)
126 # legend("topleft",lty=1,col=c(4,2,3),
127 #       legend=c("Mean method","Naive method","Drift method"))
128 # lines(Mkt_test2,col=6)
129
130 # -----
131
132 # 1. Exp Smoothing
133
134 # Mkt <- read.csv("../Data/Dax_2000_d.csv")
135 # nrow(Mkt)
136 # Mkt$Date[2999]
137 # Mkt_ts <- ts(Mkt$Close)
138 # #Mkt_ts <- ts(Mkt$Close,frequency=252, start=c(2000,1))
139 # #Mkt_train <- window(Mkt_ts, start=2000, end=2009.99)
140 # Mkt_train <- window(Mkt_ts, end=2999.99)
141 # Mkt_test <- window(Mkt_ts, start=3000)
142 #
143 # # a.build the mean model
144 # mean_model <- ets(Mkt_train)
145 # a <- accuracy(mean_model, Mkt_test) #out of sample
146 # rownames(a) <- c('Mean Training Set', 'Mean Test Set')

```

```

147 # a
148
149 # exp_sm <- function(Mkt_ts, Mkt, st){
150 #   #browser()
151 #   Mkta <- Mkt
152 #   cc <- Mkta[1,]
153 #   cc$a <- 0
154 #   ln <- nrow(Mkt)
155 #   lb <- 300 #lookback
156 #   for(i in 301:ed){
157 #     st <- i-300
158 #     Mkt_slice <- window(Mkt_ts,start=st,end=i)
159 #     mod <- ets(Mkt_slice, model="AAN")
160 #     fcast <- forecast.ets(mod)
161 #     a <- fcast$fitted[300]
162 #     b <- Mkta[i,]
163 #     ab <- cbind(b,a)
164 #     cc <- rbind(cc,ab)
165 #   }
166 #   cc <- cc[-1,]
167 #   return(cc)
168 # }
169 #
170 # Mkt <- read.csv("../Data/Dax_2000_d.csv")
171 # Mkt_ts <- ts(Mkt$Close)
172 # res <- exp_sm(Mkt_ts, Mkt, 3500)
173 # write.csv(res,'../Data/Dax_ets_aan_300.csv')
174
175 # -----
176 # 2. ARIMA -----
177 Mkt <- read.csv("../Data/F100_2000_d.csv")
178 Mkt_ts <- ts(Mkt$Close)
179 Mkt_train <- window(Mkt_ts, end=2999.99)
180 Mkt_test <- window(Mkt_ts, start=3000)
181
182 # -----
183 # 2.1. Plot the data. Identify any unusual observations.
184 savepdf("chp_ts_ftse_2000-13")
185 plot.ts(Mkt_train,
186         main="FTSE 2000 - 2013",
187         xlab="Days since 2000",
188         ylab="FTSE Closing Price",
189         xlim=c(100, 3000))
190 dev.off()
191
192 # 2.2. If necessary, transform the data (using a Box-Cox transformation)
193 #to stabilize the variance.
194
195 # 2.3. If the data are non-stationary: take first differences of the
196 #data until the data are stationary.
197 savepdf("chp_ts_ftse_2000-13_diff")
198 plot(diff(Mkt_train),
199      main="First Difference of FTSE 2000 - 2013",
200      xlab="Days since 2000",
201      ylab="FTSE Daily Price Movement",

```

```

202         xlim=c(100, 3000))
203 dev.off()
204
205 # -----
206 # 2.4. Examine the ACF/PACF: Is an AR(p) or MA(q) model appropriate?
207
208 # all 3 incl diff
209 savepdf("chp_ts_ftse_2000-13_diff_acf_tsd")
210 tsdisplay(diff(Mkt_train),main="FTSE 100 between 2000 and 2013",
211           xlab="Days since 2000",
212           ylab="FTSE Daily Price Movement")
213 dev.off()
214
215 # a ACF
216 savepdf("chp_ts_ftse_2000-13_diff_acf")
217 plot(Acf(diff(Mkt_train)),
218      main="ACF of FTSE 100 between 2000 and 2013",
219      ylim=c(-0.08, 0.08))
220 dev.off()
221
222 # a PACF
223 savepdf("chp_ts_ftse_2000-13_diff_pacf")
224 plot(Pacf(diff(Mkt_train)),
225      main="PACF of FTSE 100 between 2000 and 2013",
226      ylim=c(-0.08, 0.08))
227 dev.off()
228
229 # -----
230 # 2.5. Try your chosen model(s), and use the AICc to search for a better model.
231
232 mod_ar <- function(Mkt_ts, ord, nm){
233   res <- t(as.data.frame(rep(0,4)))
234   mod <- Arima(Mkt_ts, order=ord)
235   res[1,1] <- nm
236   res[1,2] <- round(mod$aic,1)
237   res[1,3] <- round(mod$aicc,1)
238   res[1,4] <- round(mod$bic,1)
239   return(res)
240 }
241
242 results <- t(as.data.frame(rep(0,4)))
243 colnames(results) <- c('Model','AIC','AICc','BIC')
244
245 r2 <- mod_ar(Mkt_train, c(3,1,1), 'Arima(3,1,1)')
246 results <- rbind(results,r2)
247 r2 <- mod_ar(Mkt_train, c(3,1,2), 'Arima(3,1,2)')
248 results <- rbind(results,r2)
249 r2 <- mod_ar(Mkt_train, c(3,1,3), 'Arima(3,1,3)')
250 results <- rbind(results,r2)
251 r2 <- mod_ar(Mkt_train, c(2,1,1), 'Arima(2,1,1)')
252 results <- rbind(results,r2)
253 r2 <- mod_ar(Mkt_train, c(2,1,2), 'Arima(2,1,2)')
254 results <- rbind(results,r2)
255 r2 <- mod_ar(Mkt_train, c(2,1,3), 'Arima(2,1,3)')
256 results <- rbind(results,r2)

```

```

257 results <- results[-1,]
258
259 # produce latex table
260 dat <- results
261 dig <- c(0,0,2,2,2)
262 cap <- c("AIC, AICc and BIC results from alternative ARIMA models.",
263         "AIC, AICc and BIC results from alternative ARIMA models")
264 lab = 'tab:chp_ts:arima_res_r'
265 filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_arima_res_r.tex'
266 inclrnam=F
267 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
268
269 # -----
270 # 2.6. Check the residuals from your chosen model by plotting the ACF of the
      residuals,
271 #and doing a portmanteau test of the residuals.
272 #If they do not look like white noise, try a modified model.
273
274 model_used_for_res <- Arima(Mkt_train, order=c(2,1,3))
275 model_name <- forecast(model_used_for_res)$method
276
277 # a mean of residual
278 residual <- model_used_for_res$residuals
279 savepdf("chp_ts_ftse_2000-13_mean_residuals")
280 plot(residual, main = paste("Residuals from model of", model_name),
281      ylab="", xlab="Day")
282 dev.off()
283
284 # b. acf of residual
285 savepdf("chp_ts_ftse_2000-13_acf_residuals")
286 Acf(residuals(model_used_for_res),
287     main= paste("ACF of Residuals of", model_name))
288 dev.off()
289
290 # c. variance - use plot from a
291
292 # d. histogram of residuals - normal distribution
293 savepdf("chp_ts_ftse_2000-13_hist_residuals")
294 hist(residual, nclass="FD", main="Histogram of residuals")
295 dev.off()
296
297 # e. portmanteau tests
298 bb <- Box.test(residuals(model_used_for_res), lag=24, fitdf=4, type="Ljung")
299 results_bc <- as.data.frame(rep(0,3))
300 results_bc[1,1] <- round(bb$p.value,4)
301 results_bc[2,1] <- round(bb$parameter)
302 results_bc[3,1] <- round(bb$statistic)
303 #colnames(results_bc) <- c(paste(bb$method,forecast(model_311)$method))
304 colnames(results_bc) <- c(forecast(model_used_for_res)$method)
305 rownames(results_bc) <- c('p-value','x-squared','df')
306 #results_bc[1,1]
307 results_bc_t <- t(results_bc)
308
309 dat <- results_bc_t
310 dig <- c(0,4,0,0)

```

```

311 cap <- c("Box Ljung test of FTSE 100 ARIMA model residuals.",
312         "Box Ljung test of FTSE 100 ARIMA model residuals")
313 lab = 'tab:chp_ts:arima_res_rbox_l'
314 filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_arima_res_r_box_l.tex'
315 inclrnam=TRUE
316 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
317
318 # 2.7 Once the residuals look like white noise, calculate forecasts.
319 model_used_for_res <- Arima(Mkt_ts, order=c(2,1,3))
320 model_name <- forecast(model_used_for_res)$method
321
322 arima_man_fcast <- forecast.Arima(model_used_for_res,Mkt_test)
323 fitted.data <- as.data.frame(arima_man_fcast$fitted);
324 #ln <- nrow(Mkt)
325 #lw <- nrow(fitted.data)
326 #Mkt_test_df <- Mkt[(ln-lw+1):ln,]
327 Mkt_test_df <- cbind(Mkt,fitted.data)
328 colnames(Mkt_test_df) <- c('Date','Open','High','Low','Close','Forecast')
329
330 # plot the results
331 dat <- tail(Mkt_test_df)
332 dig <- 0
333 cap <- c("One step ahead forecast for FTSE 100 generated from ARIMA(2,1,3) model.",
334         ",
335         "Forecast for FTSE 100 generated from the ARIMA model")
336 lab = 'tab:chp_ts:ftse_100_fcast'
337 filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_ftse_100_fcast.tex'
338 inclrnam=F
339 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
340
341 # -----
342 # 2.8 auto.arima
343
344 arim_mod_fnc <- function(fil,nm){
345   dfres <- dfres <- t(c('a','b'))
346   for(i in 1:length(fil)){
347     Mkt <- read.csv(fil[i])
348     Mkt_train <- ts(Mkt$Close)
349     arima_train_mod <- auto.arima(Mkt_train)
350     dfres <- rbind(dfres,c(nm[i], forecast(arima_train_mod)$method))
351   }
352   return(dfres)
353 }
354
355 fg <- arim_mod_fnc(fil,nm)
356 fg <- fg[-1,]
357 colnames(fg) <- c('Market','Arima Model')
358
359 # plot the results
360 dat <- fg
361 dig <- 0
362 cap <- c("Arima models chosen to forecast future values in the national indice
363         data sets.",
364         "Arima models chosen for the indice data sets")

```

```

364 lab = 'tab:chp_ts_arima_models'
365 filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_arima_models.tex'
366 inclrnam=F
367 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
368
369 # plot the results for Chp 6 ...
370 dat <- fg
371 dig <- 0
372 cap <- c("Arima models chosen to forecast future values in the national indice
      data sets.",
373          "Arima models chosen for the indice data sets")
374 lab = 'tab:chp_ts_arima_models_chp6'
375 filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_arima_models_chp6.tex'
376 inclrnam=F
377 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
378
379
380
381 # -----
382 # 3. Trading System
383 # using the models generated from the auto.arima function
384
385 df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
386
387 ts_1_fnc <- function(fil,nm,ts1){
388   for(i in 1:length(fil)){
389
390     Mkt <- read.csv(fil[i])
391     Mkt_ts <- ts(Mkt$Close)
392     Mkt_train <- window(Mkt_ts, end=2999.99)
393     Mkt_test <- window(Mkt_ts, start=3000)
394     arima_train_mod <- auto.arima(Mkt_train)
395     arima_fcast <- forecast.Arima(arima_train_mod,Mkt_test)
396     arima_test_mod <- Arima(Mkt_test, model = arima_train_mod) # 1 step fcast on
      future data ...
397     arima_test_fcast <- forecast(arima_test_mod)
398     fitted.data <- as.data.frame(arima_test_fcast$fitted);
399     ln <- nrow(Mkt)
400     lw <- nrow(fitted.data)
401     Mkt_test_df <- Mkt[(ln-lw+1):ln,]
402     Mkt_test_df <- cbind(Mkt_test_df,fitted.data)
403     colnames(Mkt_test_df) <- c("Date","Open", "High","Low","Close","p")
404     if(ts1 == TRUE){
405       a <- ts_1(Mkt_test_df, 0, nm[i]) # System 1
406     } else {
407       a <- ts_2(Mkt_test_df, 0, nm[i]) # System 2
408     }
409     df10 <- rbind(df10, a)
410   }
411   df.name <- names(a)
412   names(df10) <- df.name
413   df10 <- df10[-c(1),]
414   return(df10)
415 }
416

```

```

417 # run the fnc ts_1
418 # apply Sys 1 to the auto.arima data
419 res1 <- ts_1_fnc(fil,nm,TRUE)
420
421 # produce latex table from ts_1
422 dat <- res1[,c(1,3,4,5,7,8,10)]
423 dig <- 0
424 cap <- c("Forecasts generated by the ARIMA models used in the System 1 algorithm.",
425         ",
426         "Forecasts generated by the ARIMA models used in the System 1 algorithm"
427         )
428 lab = 'tab:chp_ts:arima1'
429 filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_arima1.tex'
430 inclrnam=FALSE
431 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
432
433 # compare to Naive reverse
434 diff_df1 <- sub_df_av_pl(res1,NaiveRev)
435 # produce latex table from ts_1
436 #dat <- diff[,c(1,7,10)]
437 dat <- diff_df1
438 dig <- 0
439 cap <- c("Mean Long/Short PL from system using predictions from ARIMA models with
440         the results from the Naive Reverse system subtracted.",
441         "Mean PL from ARIMA models minus mean PL from Naive Reverse system")
442 lab = 'tab:chp_ts:arima1_diff'
443 filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_arima1_diff.tex'
444 inclrnam=FALSE
445 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
446
447 # -----
448 # run the fnc ts_2
449 # apply system 2 to auto.arima data
450 res2 <- ts_1_fnc(fil,nm,FALSE) # F = ts_2
451
452 # produce latex table from ts_2
453 dat <- res2[,c(1,3,4,5,7,8,10)]
454 dig <- 0
455 cap <- c("Forecasts generated by the ARIMA models used in the System 1 algorithm.",
456         ",
457         "Forecasts generated by the ARIMA models used in the System 1 algorithm"
458         )
459 lab = 'tab:chp_ts:arima2'
460 filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_arima2.tex'
461 inclrnam=FALSE
462 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
463
464 # -----
465 # ----- RM Generated Files -----
466 # ----- HYBRID ARIMA SYSTEMS -----
467
468 source("../RCode/ts_1.R")
469 source("../RCode/ts_2.R")
470 Mkt <- read.csv("../Data/rm_ar334_reg.csv",stringsAsFactors=F)

```



```

467
468 ts_1_2_fnc_ar <- function(fil,nm,ts1){
469   for(i in 1:length(fil)){
470     Mkt <- read.csv(fil[i],stringsAsFactors=F)
471     Mkt_p <- Mkt[,c(1,2,3,4,5,18)]
472     colnames(Mkt_p) <- c("Date", "Open", "High", "Low", "Close", "p")
473     if(ts1 == TRUE){
474       a <- ts_1(Mkt_p, 0, nm[i])
475     } else {
476       a <- ts_2(Mkt_p, 0, nm[i])
477     }
478     df10 <- rbind(df10, a)
479   }
480   df.name <- names(a)
481   names(df10) <- df.name
482   df10 <- df10[-c(1),]
483   return(df10)
484 }
485
486 # ----- Predicting Closing Price -----
487 # 1. ----- Arima Ann Predicting Closing Price -----
488 fil <- c("../Data/ARIMA/Predict_Close/ar334_ann_DAX.csv",
489          "../Data/ARIMA/Predict_Close/ar334_ann_CAC.csv",
490          "../Data/ARIMA/Predict_Close/ar334_ann_FTSE.csv",
491          "../Data/ARIMA/Predict_Close/ar334_ann_Dow.csv",
492          "../Data/ARIMA/Predict_Close/ar334_ann_Nik.csv",
493          "../Data/ARIMA/Predict_Close/ar334_ann_Oz.csv")
494
495 #nm <- c("Dax", "CAC", "FTSE", "Dow", "Nikkei", "AORD")
496 df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
497
498 # a. System 1
499 res3 <- ts_1_2_fnc_ar(fil,nm,TRUE)
500
501 # produce latex table from ts_1
502 dat <- res3[,c(1,3,4,5,7,8,10)]
503 dig <- 0
504 cap <- c("Results from passing closing price predictions from hybrid ARIMA/ANN
505         model to System 1.",
506         "Results from passing closing price predictions from hybrid ARIMA/ANN
507         model to System 1")
508 lab = 'tab:chp_ts:arima_ann_sys1'
509 filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_arima_ann_sys1.tex'
510 inclrnam=FALSE
511 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
512
513 # comp aring to Naive Prev
514 res_diff3 <- sub_df_av_pl(res3,NaiveRev)
515
516 dat <- res_diff3
517 dig <- 0
518 cap <- c("Results from a trading system based on forecasts of closing price
519         generated by the Arima/ANN model compared to baseline Naive Reversing
520         methodology.",

```

```

517         "Arima/ANN predictions passed to System 1 compared to Naive Reversing
          methodology")
518 lab = 'tab:chp_ts:arima_ann_sys1_diff'
519 filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_arima_ann_sys1_diff.tex'
520 inclrnam=FALSE
521 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
522
523 # a. System 2
524 res4 <- ts_1_2_fnc_ar(fil,nm,FALSE)
525
526 # produce latex table from ts_1
527 dat <- res4[,c(1,3,4,5,7,8,10)]
528 dig <- 0
529 cap <- c("Results from passing closing price predictions from hybrid ARIMA/ANN
          model to System 2.",
530         "Results from passing closing price predictions from hybrid ARIMA/ANN
          model to System 2")
531 lab = 'tab:chp_ts:arima_ann_sys2'
532 filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_arima_ann_sys2.tex'
533 inclrnam=FALSE
534 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
535
536 # 2. ----- Arima knn Predicting Closing Price -----
537 fil <- c("../Data/ARIMA/Predict_Close/ar334_knn_Dax.csv",
538         "../Data/ARIMA/Predict_Close/ar334_knn_CAC.csv",
539         "../Data/ARIMA/Predict_Close/ar334_knn_F100.csv",
540         "../Data/ARIMA/Predict_Close/ar334_knn_Dow.csv",
541         "../Data/ARIMA/Predict_Close/ar334_knn_Nik.csv",
542         "../Data/ARIMA/Predict_Close/ar334_knn_Oz.csv")
543
544 # a. System 1
545 #nm <- c("Dax","CAC","FTSE","Dow","Nikkei","AORD")
546 df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
547 # a. System 1
548 res5 <- ts_1_2_fnc_ar(fil,nm,TRUE)
549
550 # produce latex table from ts_1
551 dat <- res5[,c(1,3,4,5,7,8,10)]
552 dig <- 0
553 cap <- c("Results from passing closing price predictions from hybrid ARIMA/k-NN
          model to System 1.",
554         "Results from passing closing price predictions from hybrid ARIMA/k-NN
          model to System 1")
555 lab = 'tab:chp_ts:pred_close_arima_knn_sys1'
556 filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_pred_close_arima_knn_sys1.tex'
557 inclrnam=FALSE
558 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
559
560 # comp aring to Naive Prev
561 #res_diff <- sub_df_av_pl(res,NaiveRev)
562 res_diff5 <- sub_df(res5,NaiveRev)
563
564 # produce latex table from ts_1
565 dat <- res_diff5[,c(1,3,4,5,7,8,10)]
566 dig <- 0

```

```

567 cap <- c("Results from a system using forecasts from a Arima/k-NN model with the
568       results of the Naive Reversing System subtracted.",
569       "Mean PL from hybrid ARIMA/k-NN models minus mean PL from Naive Reverse
       system")
569 lab = 'tab:chp_ts:pred_close_arima_knn_sys1_diff'
570 filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_pred_close_arima_knn_sys1_diff.tex'
571 inclrn=FALSE
572 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrn)
573
574 # a. System
575 res6 <- ts_1_2_fnc_ar(fil,nm,FALSE)
576
577 # produce latex table from ts_1
578 dat <- res6[,c(1,3,4,5,7,8,10)]
579 dig <- 0
580 cap <- c("Results from passing closing price predictions from hybrid ARIMA/k-NN
581       model to System 2.",
582       "Results from passing closing price predictions from hybrid ARIMA/k-NN
       model to System 2")
582 lab = 'tab:chp_ts:pred_close_arima_knn_sys2'
583 filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_pred_close_arima_knn_sys2.tex'
584 inclrn=FALSE
585 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrn)
586
587 # -----
588 # ----- Arima Ann Predicting Up/Dn - Categorical -----
589 # a. Categorical
590
591 # 1. ARMA / ANN (Predicting Up/Dn - Categorical)
592 source("../RCode/ts_4.R")
593 source("../RCode/Utils.R")
594 fil <- c("../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_CAT/ar_334_UD_ANN_Dax.csv",
595       "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_CAT/ar_334_UD_ANN_CAC.csv",
596       "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_CAT/ar_334_UD_ANN_F100.csv",
597       "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_CAT/ar_334_UD_ANN_Dow.csv",
598       "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_CAT/ar_334_UD_ANN_N225.csv",
599       "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_CAT/ar_334_UD_ANN_Oz.csv")
600
601 #nm <- c("Dax","CAC","FTSE","Dow","Nik","AORD")
602 df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
603
604 res7 <- ts_4_fnc_ar(fil,0, nm)
605
606 # produce latex table from ts_1
607 dat <- res7[,c(1,3,4,5,7,8,10)]
608 dig <- 0
609 cap <- c("Results from a trading system using the forecast of categorical label \
610       \"U/D\" from hybrid ARIMA/ANN model.",
611       "Results from a trading system using the forecast of categorical label \
       \"U/D\" from hybrid ARIMA/ANN model")
611 lab = 'tab:chp_ts:pUD_CAT_arima_ann_sys'
612 filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_predUpDn_CAT_arima_ann_sys.tex'
613 inclrn=FALSE
614 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrn)
615

```

```

616 # -----
617 # 2. ARMA / knn (Predicting Up/Dn - Categorical)
618 #source("../RCode/ts_4.R")
619 #source("../RCode/Utils.R")
620 fil <- c("../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_CAT/ar_334_UD_knn_Dax.csv",
621          "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_CAT/ar_334_UD_knn_CAC.csv",
622          "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_CAT/ar_334_UD_knn_F100.csv",
623          "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_CAT/ar_334_UD_knn_Dow.csv",
624          "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_CAT/ar_334_UD_knn_N225.csv",
625          "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_CAT/ar_334_UD_knn_Oz.csv")
626
627 nm <- c("Dax", "CAC", "FTSE", "Dow", "Nikkei", "AORD")
628 df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11), nrow=1, ncol=11))
629
630 res8 <- ts_4_fnc_ar(fil, 0, nm)
631
632 # produce latex table from ts_1
633 dat <- res8[,c(1,3,4,5,7,8,10)]
634 dig <- 0
635 cap <- c("Results from a trading system using the forecast of categorical label \
        \"U/D\" from hybrid ARIMA/k-NN model.",
636          "Results from a trading system using the forecast of categorical label \
        \"U/D\" from hybrid ARIMA/k-NN model")
637 lab = 'tab:chp_ts:pUD_CAT_arima_knn_sys'
638 filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_predUpDn_CAT_arima_knn_sys.tex'
639 inclrnam=FALSE
640 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
641
642
643 # 2. ARMA / knn (Predicting Up/Dn - Categorical) - SLoss
644 res8a <- ts_4_fnc_ar(fil, -100, nm)
645
646 # produce latex table from ts_1
647 dat <- res8a[,c(1,3,4,5,7,8,10)]
648 dig <- 0
649 cap <- c("Results from a trading system with a stop loss using the forecast of
        categorical label \"U/D\" from hybrid ARIMA/k-NN model.",
650          "Results from a trading system with a stop loss using the forecast of
        categorical label \"U/D\" from hybrid ARIMA/k-NN model")
651 lab = 'tab:chp_ts:pUD_CAT_arima_knn_sys_SL'
652 filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_predUpDn_CAT_arima_knn_sys_SL.tex'
653 inclrnam=FALSE
654 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
655
656
657 # comp aring to Naive Prev
658 #res_diff <- sub_df_av_pl(res,NaiveRev)
659 res_diff8 <- sub_df(res8,NaiveRev)
660
661 # produce latex table from ts_1
662 dat <- res_diff8[,c(1,3,4,5,7,8,10)]
663 dig <- 0
664 cap <- c("Results from Naive Reversing System subtracted from results generated
        from predicting Up/Down categorical label using Arima/k-NN.",
665          "Predicting UpDn CAT - Arima/k-NN predictions passed to System 4 - ")

```

```

666 lab = 'tab:chp_ts:pUD_CAT_arima_knn_sys_diff'
667 filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_predUpDn_CAT_arima_knn_sys_diff.tex'
668 inclrnam=FALSE
669 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
670
671
672 # 3. ARMA / Reg (Logistic) (Predicting Up/Dn - Categorical)
673
674
675 # 4. ARMA / SVM (Predicting Up/Dn - Categorical)
676 fil <- c("../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_CAT/ar_334_UD_svm_Dax.csv",
677          "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_CAT/ar_334_UD_svm_CAC.csv",
678          "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_CAT/ar_334_UD_svm_F100.csv",
679          "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_CAT/ar_334_UD_svm_Dow2.csv",
680          "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_CAT/ar_334_UD_svm_N225.csv",
681          "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_CAT/ar_334_UD_svm_Oz.csv")
682
683 #nm <- c("Dax","CAC","FTSE","Dow","Nikkei","AORD")
684 df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
685
686 res9 <- ts_4_fnc_ar(fil,0, nm)
687
688 # produce latex table from ts_1
689 dat <- res9[,c(1,3,4,5,7,8,10)]
690 dig <- 0
691 cap <- c("Results from a trading system using the forecast of categorical label \
        \"U/D\" from hybrid ARIMA/SVM model.",
692          "Results from a trading system using the forecast of categorical label \
        \"U/D\" from hybrid ARIMA/SVM model")
693 lab = 'tab:chp_ts:pUD_CAT_arima_svm_sys'
694 filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_predUpDn_CAT_arima_svm_sys.tex'
695 inclrnam=FALSE
696 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
697
698 # -----
699 # ----- Arima Ann Predicting Up/Dn - 01 -----
700 source("../RCode/ts_3a.R")
701 #source("../RCode/Utils.R")
702 # 1. ARMA / ANN - (Predicting Up/Dn - 01)
703 fil <- c("../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_01/ar_334_01_ANN_Dax.csv",
704          "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_01/ar_334_01_ANN_CAC.csv",
705          "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_01/ar_334_01_ANN_FTSE.csv",
706          "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_01/ar_334_01_ANN_Dow.csv",
707          "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_01/ar_334_01_ANN_N225.csv",
708          "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_01/ar_334_01_ANN_Oz.csv")
709
710 #nm <- c("Dax","CAC","FTSE","Dow","Nikkei","AORD")
711 df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
712
713 res10 <- ts_3a_fnc_ar(fil, nm)
714
715 # produce latex table from ts_1
716 dat <- res10[,c(1,3,4,5,7,8,10)]
717 dig <- 0

```

```

718 cap <- c("Results from a trading system using the forecast of a continous label
       from a hybrid ARIMA/ANN model.",
719         "Results from a trading system using the forecast of a continous label
       from a hybrid ARIMA/ANN model")
720 lab = 'tab:chp_ts:pUD_01_arima_ann_sys'
721 filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_predUpDn_01_arima_ann_sys.tex'
722 inclrnam=FALSE
723 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
724
725
726 # 2. ARMA / knn (Predicting Up/Dn - 01)
727
728 source("../RCode/ts_3.R")
729 fil_01_ar_knn <- c("../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_01/ar_334_01_knn_Dax.csv",
730                   "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_01/ar_334_01_knn_CAC.csv",
731                   "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_01/ar_334_01_knn_FTSE.csv",
732                   "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_01/ar_334_01_knn_Dow.csv",
733                   "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_01/ar_334_01_knn_Nik.csv",
734                   "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_01/ar_334_01_knn_Oz.csv")
735 #nm <- c("Dax","CAC","FTSE","Dow","Nikkei","AORD")
736 df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
737
738 res11 <- ts_3_fnc_ar(fil_01_ar_knn, nm)
739
740 # produce latex table from ts_1
741 dat <- res11[,c(1,3,4,5,7,8,10)]
742 dig <- 0
743 cap <- c("Results from a trading system using the forecast of a continous label
       from a hybrid ARIMA/k-NN model.",
744         "Results from a trading system using the forecast of a continous label
       from a hybrid ARIMA/ANN model")
745 lab = 'tab:chp_ts:pUD_01_arima_knn_sys'
746 filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_predUpDn_01_arima_knn_sys.tex'
747 inclrnam=FALSE
748 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
749
750 # comp to Naive
751 #res_diff <- sub_df_av_pl(NaiveRev, res)
752 res_diff11 <- sub_df(res11,NaiveRev)
753
754 dat <- res_diff11[,c(1,3,4,5,7,8,10)]
755 dig <- 0
756 cap <- c("Results from Naive Reversing System subtracted from results generated
       from predicting Up/Down Numerical label using Arima/k-NN.",
757         "Predicting UpDn 01 - Arima/k-NN predictions passed to System 3.")
758 lab = 'tab:chp_ts:pUD_01_arima_knn_sys_diff'
759 filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_predUpDn_01_arima_knn_sys_diff.tex'
760 inclrnam=FALSE
761 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam)
762
763
764 # b3. ARMA / Reg (Predicting Up/Dn - 01)
765 fil <- c("../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_01/ar_334_01_Reg_Dax.csv",
766          "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_01/ar_334_01_Reg_CAC.csv",
767          "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_01/ar_334_01_Reg_FTSE.csv",

```

```

768         "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_01/ar_334_01_Reg_Dow.csv",
769         "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_01/ar_334_01_Reg_Nik.csv",
770         "../Data/ARIMA/PredUpDn_01/ar_334_01_Reg_Oz.csv")
771 #nm <- c("Dax","CAC","FTSE","Dow","Nikkei","AORD")
772 df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
773
774 res12 <- ts_3_fnc_ar(fil, nm)
775
776 # produce latex table from ts_1
777 dat <- res12[,c(1,3,4,5,7,8,10)]
778 dig <- 0
779 cap <- c("Predicting UpDn 01 - Arima/Reg predictions passed to System 3",
780         "Predicting UpDn 01 - Arima/Reg predictions passed to System 3.")
781 lab = 'tab:chp_ts:01_arima_reg_sys'
782 filename = '../Tables/chp_ts_predUpDn_01_arima_reg_sys.tex'
783 inclrn=FALSE
784 print_xt(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrn)
785
786
787 # END

```

RCode/Chapter5.R

## A.2.1 System 1

```

<appA:ts_1>
1 ts_1 <- function(Mkt, SLoss, MktName){
2   # Trading system using predictions from ARIMA models. Uses relative
3   # value of the forecast with the previous close
4   #
5   #   Mkt: market data
6   #   SLoss: stop loss
7   #   MktName: market's name for print out
8   # Returns:
9   #   results vector.
10
11   results <- createResultsVector(MktName, SLoss)
12
13   Mkt$p_c <- c( NA, Mkt$Close[ - length(Mkt$Close) ] ) # prev close
14
15   # Trade Long
16   Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$p > Mkt$p_c, Mkt$Close - Mkt$Open, NA)
17   results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
18   #Adj for SLoss
19   if (SLoss < 0) {
20     Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$p > Mkt$p_c,
21                       ifelse((Mkt$Low-Mkt$Open) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Long),
22                       Mkt$Long)
23     results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
24   }
25
26   # Trade Short
27   Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$p < Mkt$p_c, Mkt$Open - Mkt$Close, NA)
28   results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))

```

```

29 #Adj for SLoss
30 if (SLoss < 0){
31     Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$p < Mkt$p_c,
32                         ifelse((Mkt$Open-Mkt$High) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Short),
33                         Mkt$Short)
34     results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
35 }
36
37 Stats <- calcStats2(Mkt$Long)
38 results[5:7] <- Stats
39
40 Stats <- calcStats2(Mkt$Short)
41 results[8:10] <- Stats
42
43 return(results)
44 }

```

RCode/ts.1.R

## A.2.2 System 2

```

<appA:ts_2>
1 ts_2 <- function(Mkt, SLoss, MktName){
2   # Trading system using predictions from ARIMA models. Uses
3   # relative value of the forecast and the previous forecast
4   #
5   # Mkt: market data
6   # SLoss: stop loss
7   # MktName: market's name for print out
8   # Returns:
9   # results vector.
10
11   results <- createResultsVector(MktName, SLoss)
12
13   Mkt$p_p <- c( NA, Mkt$p[ - length(Mkt$p) ] ) # prev prediction
14
15   # Trade Long
16   Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$p > Mkt$p_p, Mkt$Close - Mkt$Open, NA)
17   results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
18   #Adj for SLoss
19   if (SLoss < 0) {
20     Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$p > Mkt$p_p,
21                       ifelse((Mkt$Low-Mkt$Open) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Long),
22                       Mkt$Long)
23     results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
24   }
25
26   # Trade Short
27   Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$p < Mkt$p_p, Mkt$Open - Mkt$Close, NA)
28   results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
29   #Adj for SLoss
30   if (SLoss < 0){
31     Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$p < Mkt$p_p,
32                       ifelse((Mkt$Open-Mkt$High) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Short),

```



```

33         Mkt$Short)
34     results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
35 }
36
37 Stats <- calcStats2(Mkt$Long)
38 results[5:7] <- Stats
39
40 Stats <- calcStats2(Mkt$Short)
41 results[8:10] <- Stats
42
43 return(results)
44 }

```

RCode/ts\_2.R

### A.2.3 Categorical Label

<appA:ts\_4>

```

1 ts_4 <- function(Mkt, SLoss, MktName){
2   # trading system based on prediction from ANN working with categorical
3   # label with valued U or D
4   #
5   # Mkt: market data
6   # SLoss: stop loss
7   # MktName: market's name for print out
8   #
9   # Returns:
10  # results vector.
11
12  results <- createResultsVector(MktName, SLoss)
13
14  # Trade Long
15  Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$pred == "U", Mkt$Close - Mkt$Open, NA)
16  results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
17  #Adj for SLoss
18  if (SLoss < 0) {
19    Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$pred == "U",
20                      ifelse((Mkt$Low-Mkt$Open) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Long),
21                      Mkt$Long)
22    results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
23  }
24
25  # Trade Short
26  Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$pred == "D", Mkt$Open - Mkt$Close, NA)
27  results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
28  #Adj for SLoss
29  if (SLoss < 0){
30    Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$pred == "D",
31                      ifelse((Mkt$Open-Mkt$High) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Short),
32                      Mkt$Short)
33    results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
34  }
35
36  Stats <- calcStats2(Mkt$Long)

```

```

37   results[5:7] <- Stats
38
39   Stats <- calcStats2(Mkt$Short)
40   results[8:10] <- Stats
41
42   return(results)
43 }

```

RCode/ts\_4.R

## A.2.4 Continuous Label - ARIMA/ANN

```

(appA:ts_3a)
1 ts_3a <- function(Mkt, SLoss, MktName){
2   #
3   #
4   #   Mkt: market data
5   #   SLoss: stop loss
6   #   MktName: market's name for print out
7   #
8   # Returns:
9   #   results vector.
10
11  results <- createResultsVector(MktName, SLoss)
12  #browser()
13  Mkt$v <- as.numeric(Mkt$p)
14  lvl <- min(Mkt$v) + ((max(Mkt$v) - min(Mkt$v))/2)
15
16  # Trade Long
17  Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$v > lvl, Mkt$Close - Mkt$Open, NA)
18  results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
19  #Adj for SLoss
20  if (SLoss < 0) {
21    Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$v > lvl,
22                      ifelse((Mkt$Low-Mkt$Open) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Long),
23                      Mkt$Long)
24    results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
25  }
26
27  # Trade Short
28  Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$v < lvl, Mkt$Open - Mkt$Close, NA)
29  results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
30  #Adj for SLoss
31  if (SLoss < 0){
32    Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$v < lvl,
33                      ifelse((Mkt$Open-Mkt$High) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Short),
34                      Mkt$Short)
35    results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
36  }
37
38  Stats <- calcStats2(Mkt$Long)
39  results[5:7] <- Stats
40
41  Stats <- calcStats2(Mkt$Short)

```

```

42   results[8:10] <- Stats
43
44   return(results)
45 }

```

RCode/ts\_3a.R

### A.2.5 Continuous Label

<appA:ts\_3>

```

1 ts_3 <- function(Mkt, SLoss, MktName){
2   #
3   #
4   #   Mkt: market data
5   #   SLoss: stop loss
6   #   MktName: market's name for print out
7   #
8   # Returns:
9   #   results vector.
10
11   results <- createResultsVector(MktName, SLoss)
12
13   # Trade Long
14   Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$p > 0.55, Mkt$Close - Mkt$Open, NA)
15   results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
16   #Adj for SLoss
17   if (SLoss < 0) {
18     Mkt$Long <- ifelse(Mkt$p > 0.55,
19                       ifelse((Mkt$Low-Mkt$Open) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Long),
20                       Mkt$Long)
21     results["LongPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Long, na.rm=TRUE))
22   }
23
24   # Trade Short
25   Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$p < 0.55, Mkt$Open - Mkt$Close, NA)
26   results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
27   #Adj for SLoss
28   if (SLoss < 0){
29     Mkt$Short <- ifelse(Mkt$p < 0.55,
30                       ifelse((Mkt$Open-Mkt$High) < SLoss, SLoss, Mkt$Short),
31                       Mkt$Short)
32     results["ShortPL"] <- round(sum(Mkt$Short, na.rm=TRUE))
33   }
34
35   Stats <- calcStats2(Mkt$Long)
36   results[5:7] <- Stats
37
38   Stats <- calcStats2(Mkt$Short)
39   results[8:10] <- Stats
40
41   return(results)
42 }

```

RCode/ts\_3.R

### A.3 Utility Code

```
?appA:utility}
1 nm <- c("Dax", "CAC", "FTSE", "Dow", "Nikkei", "AORD")
2
3 createResultsVector <- function(MktName, SLossValue){
4   # Function to create results vector
5   #
6   # Args:
7   #   SLoss: stop loss value
8   #   MktName: market's name for print out
9   #
10  # Returns:
11  #   results vector.
12
13  results <- rep(0,11)
14  nam <- c("Mkt",          # 1. Name of Mkt
15          "S Loss",       # 1. Name of Mkt
16          "LongPL",       # 1. Name of Mkt
17          "ShortPL",      # 1. Name of Mkt
18          "L Win %",      # 1. Name of Mkt
19          "L Trades",     # 1. Name of Mkt
20          "Av L PL",      # 1. Name of Mkt
21          "S Win %",      # 1. Name of Mkt
22          "S Trades",     # 1. Name of Mkt
23          "Av S PL",
24          "misc")         # 1. Name of Mkt
25  names(results) <- nam
26  results["Mkt"] <- MktName
27  results["S Loss"] <- SLossValue
28  return(results)
29 }
30
31 calcStats <- function(x){
32   # Function to calculate trade stats
33   #
34   # Args:
35   #   x - data set
36   #
37   # Returns:
38   #   results vector.
39
40   results <- 1:3
41   v <- na.omit(x)
42
43   # Win %
44   wins <- length(v[v>0])
45   losses <- length(v[v<0])
46   results[1] <- round(wins/(wins+losses)*100)
47
48   # Num Trades
49   results[2] <- length(v)
50
51   # Av Long PL
52   results[3] <- round(sum(v) / length(v))
53 }
```

```
54   return(results)
55 }
56
57 calcStats2 <- function(x){
58   # Function to calculate trade stats
59   #
60   # Args:
61   #   x - data set
62   #
63   # Returns:
64   #   results vector.
65   #browser()
66   results <- 1:3
67   #v <- na.omit(x)
68   v <- x
69
70   # Win %
71   wins <- sum(v>0,na.rm=T)
72   losses <- sum(v<0,na.rm=T)
73   results[1] <- round(wins/(wins+losses)*100)
74
75   # Num Trades
76   results[2] <- wins+losses
77
78   # Av Long PL
79   results[3] <- round(sum(v,na.rm=T) / (wins+losses))
80
81   return(results)
82 }
83
84 calcWinPer <- function(x){
85   wins <- length(x[x>0])
86   losses <- length(x[x<0])
87   return(wins/(wins+losses)*100)
88 }
89
90 calcAverageWin <- function(x){
91   wins <- length(x)
92   winpl <- sum(x, na.rm=T)
93   return((winpl/wins))
94 }
95
96 calcNumTrades <- function(x){
97   return(length(na.omit(x)))
98 }
99
100 savepdf <- function(file, width=16, height=10)
101 {
102   fname <- paste("../Figures/",file,".pdf",sep="")
103   pdf(fname, width=width/2.54, height=height/2.54,
104       pointsize=10)
105   par(mgp=c(2.2,0.45,0), tcl=-0.4, mar=c(3.3,3.6,1.1,1.1))
106 }
107
108
```

```

109 print_xt <- function(dat,dig,cap,lab,al,filename,inclrnam){
110   xt <- xtable(
111     dat,
112     digits = dig,
113     caption = cap,
114     label = lab
115   )
116   al <- c('l','l')
117   al <- c(al, rep('c',ncol(dat)-1))
118   align(xt) <- al
119   print(xt,
120     file=filename,
121     include.rownames=inclrnam,
122     caption.placement = "top",
123     hline.after=NULL,
124     add.to.row=list(pos=list(-1,0, nrow(xt)),
125       command=c('\\toprule ', '\\midrule ', '\\bottomrule ')))
126 }
127
128
129
130 # subtract 2 data frames
131 # df2 from df1
132 sub_df <- function(df1, df2){
133
134   nc <- ncol(df1)
135   ln <- nrow(df1)
136   dfres <- df1
137
138   for(i in 1:ln){
139     for(j in 2:nc){
140       dfres[i,j] <- as.numeric(df1[i,j]) - as.numeric(df2[i,j])
141     }
142   }
143   return(dfres)
144 }
145
146 # subtract 2 data frames - rtn fewer cols
147 # df2 from df1
148 sub_df_av_pl <- function(df1, df2){
149
150   nc <- ncol(df1)
151   ln <- nrow(df1)
152   dfres <- df1
153   for(i in 1:ln){
154     for(j in 2:nc){
155       dfres[i,j] <- as.numeric(df1[i,j]) - as.numeric(df2[i,j])
156     }
157   }
158   dfres <- dfres[,c(1,7,10)]
159   colnames(dfres) <- c('Mkt','Diff in Mean Long PL','Diff in Mean Short PL')
160   return(dfres)
161 }
162
163

```

```

164 # -----
165 # ----- CHAPTER 4 -----
166 # -----
167
168 # ----- Follow Previous -----
169 run_NaiveReversePrev <- function(fil,SLoss, nm){
170   df10 <- as.data.frame(matrix(seq(11),nrow=1,ncol=11))
171   for(i in 1:length(fil)){
172     Dax <- read.csv(fil[i],stringsAsFactors=F)
173     a <- NaiveReversePrev(Dax, SLoss, nm[i])
174     df10 <- rbind(df10, a)
175   }
176   df.name <- names(a)
177   names(df10) <- df.name
178   df10 <- df10[-1,]
179   return(df10)
180 }
181
182
183 # -----
184 # ----- CHAPTER 5 -----
185 # -----
186 # ----- Arima Ann Predicting Up/Dn - Categorical -----
187 # a. Categorical
188 ts_4_fnc_ar <- function(fil,SLoss,nm){
189
190   for(i in 1:length(fil)){
191     Mkt <- read.csv(fil[i],stringsAsFactors=F)
192     Mkt_p <- Mkt[,c(1,2,3,4,5)]
193     Mkt_p$pred <- Mkt$pred
194     colnames(Mkt_p) <- c("Date", "Open", "High", "Low", "Close", "pred")
195     a <- ts_4(Mkt_p, SLoss, nm[i])
196     df10 <- rbind(df10, a)
197   }
198   df.name <- names(a)
199   names(df10) <- df.name
200   df10 <- df10[-c(1),]
201   return(df10)
202 }
203
204
205 # -----
206 # ----- Arima Ann Predicting Up/Dn - 01 -----
207 ts_3_fnc_ar <- function(fil,nm,ts1){
208   for(i in 1:length(fil)){
209     Mkt <- read.csv(fil[i],stringsAsFactors=F)
210     Mkt_p <- Mkt[,c(1,2,3,4,5,18)]
211     colnames(Mkt_p) <- c("Date", "Open", "High", "Low", "Close", "p")
212     a <- ts_3(Mkt_p, 0, nm[i])
213     df10 <- rbind(df10, a)
214   }
215   df.name <- names(a)
216   names(df10) <- df.name
217   df10 <- df10[-c(1),]
218   return(df10)

```

```
219 }  
220  
221 # bit of fiddling for ANN  
222 ts_3a_fnc_ar <- function(fil,nm,ts1){  
223   for(i in 1:length(fil)){  
224     Mkt <- read.csv(fil[i],stringsAsFactors=F)  
225     Mkt_p <- Mkt[,c(1,2,3,4,5,18)]  
226     colnames(Mkt_p) <- c("Date","Open", "High","Low","Close","p")  
227     a <- ts_3a(Mkt_p, 0, nm[i])  
228     df10 <- rbind(df10, a)  
229   }  
230   df.name <- names(a)  
231   names(df10) <- df.name  
232   df10 <- df10[-c(1),]  
233   return(df10)  
234 }
```

RCode/Utils.R



## Appendix B

# Technical Indicators

⟨AppendixB⟩

### B.1 Moving Average Convergence Divergence (MACD)

⟨appB:MACD⟩

MACD is a widely used technical indicator which attempts to detect the early stage of a market trend. It is calculated by subtracting a long exponential moving average (EMA) from a shorter one. The EMA is calculated as follows:

$$EMA(n)_t = \frac{2}{n+1}(P_t - EMA_{t-1}) + EMA_{t-1}$$

Where  $P_t$  is the closing price of a market on day  $t$  and  $n$  is the number of periods used in calculating the moving average. MACD itself is calculated as:

$$MACD_t = EMA(s)_t - EMA(l)_t$$

where  $EMA(s)_t$  is the short moving average and  $EMA(l)_t$  is the long one. In addition an EMA of the MACD itself is calculated in order to generate trade signals and is often referred to as the “trigger line”. Thus a particular MACD trading rule is often expressed in the form  $MACD(s, l, k)$  where  $s$  is the number of periods of the short EMA,  $l$  the number of periods of the long EMA and  $k$  the period used to average the MACD for the trigger line.

### B.2 Aroon Indicator

⟨appB:aroon⟩

The Sanskrit word aroon means ”dawn’s early light” and the Aroon indicator attempts to show when a new market trend is dawning ([Chande and Kroll, 1994](#)). The indicator

is made up of two lines (Aroon Up and aroon Down) that measure how long it has been since the highest high and lowest low has occurred within an n period range, and an oscillator value that is the difference between the two. Aroon Up (or Down) is the elapsed time, expressed as a percentage, between today and the highest (or lowest) price in the last n periods. If the current price is a new high (or low) Aroon Up (or Aroon Down) will be 100. Each subsequent period without another new high (or low) causes Aroon up (down) to decrease by  $(1 / n) \times 100$ .

$$AroonUp = 100 * \left( \frac{n - PeriodSinceHighestHigh}{n} \right)$$

$$AroonDown = 100 * \left( \frac{n - PeriodSinceLowestLow}{n} \right)$$

When the Aroon Up is between a value of 70 and 100 it indicates an upward trend. When the Aroon Down is staying between 70 and 100 then it indicates a downward trend. A strong upward trend is indicated when the Aroon Up is above 70 while the Aroon Down is below 30. Likewise, a strong downward trend is indicated when the Aroon Down is above 70 while the Aroon Up is below 30. Also the crossing over of the lines is significant. When the Aroon Down crosses above the Aroon Up, it indicates a weakening of the upward trend (and vice versa).

The Aroon Oscillator signals an upward trend is underway when it is above zero and a downward trend is underway when it falls below zero. The farther away the oscillator is from the zero line, the stronger the trend.

### B.3 Parabolic Stop-and-Reverse (SAR)

⟨appB:sar⟩

The Parabolic Stop-and-Reverse (SAR) is a quite complex indicator developed by Welles Wilder in 1978 (Wilder, 1978). The calculation for SAR in rising and falling markets are different and are usually presented separately.

If the market is rising SAR is calculated as:

$$\text{Current SAR} = \text{Prior SAR} + \text{Prior AF}(\text{Prior EP} - \text{Prior SAR})$$

where:

- Prior SAR is the SAR value for the previous time period, for example the previous day's value.
- Extreme Point (EP) is the highest high of the current trend.
- Acceleration Factor (AF) starts at 0.02, and increases by 0.02 each time the market makes a new high (Extreme Point). The maximum value the AF can reach is 0.20, at which point it is capped.

Note: SAR can never be greater than the value of the previous two periods' lows. Should SAR be above one of those lows, it is set to the lowest of the two.

If the market is falling SAR is calculated as:

$$\text{Current SAR} = \text{Prior SAR} - \text{Prior AF}(\text{Prior SAR} - \text{Prior EP})$$

Note: SAR can never be less than the value of the previous two periods' highs. Should SAR be less than one of those highs, it is set to the lowest of the two.

## B.4 Stochastic

`<appB:stoch>`

The stochastic oscillator measures where a particular close price is in relation to the highest high and lowest low in the range under study. It is usually drawn on a chart as two lines, one is %K and the other is its moving average usually called %D.

The calculation of the stochastic involves four variables:

1. %K Period - the number of periods used in the calculation (see below).
2. %K Slowing Period - smoothing period applied to %K.
3. %D Period - the number of time periods used in the moving average of %K to generate %D.
4. %D Method - the moving average method used to calculate %D.

%K is calculated as follows:

$$\%K = 100 * \left( \frac{\text{Today's Close} - \text{Lowest Low in n Periods}}{\text{Highest High in n Periods} - \text{Lowest Low in n Periods}} \right)$$

The stochastic is used in a variety of ways. One popular method is to buy when the stochastic falls below a particular level then rises back above that level (and vice versa for a short trade). An alternative technique is to buy when the %K rises above %D and sell when it falls under %K.

## B.5 Rate of Change(ROC)

⟨appB:roc⟩

The Rate of Change or ROC indicator highlights the difference between a particular price (e.g. closing price) and the same price a number of periods previously. This value can be expressed in absolute terms or a percentage rise or fall. The calculation is as follows:

$$ROC = 100 * \left( \frac{\text{Today's Close} - \text{Today's Close } n \text{ Periods Ago}}{\text{Today's Close } n \text{ Periods Ago}} \right)$$

The ROC can be calculated from a wide range of time periods, with 12 and 25 days being the most common. The ROC is typically used as an over-bought / over-sold indicator to provide evidence for when a market turn maybe expected.

?{Bibliography}?

# Bibliography

- [MACD2][1] Achelis, S. B. Macd, 2014. URL <http://www.metastock.com/Customer/Resources/TAAZ/default.aspx?c=3&p=66>.
- [Aladag20091467][2] Aladag, C. H., E. Egrioglu, and C. Kadilar. Forecasting nonlinear time series with a hybrid methodology. *Applied Mathematics Letters*, 22(9):1467 – 1470, 2009.
- [appel2005technical][3] Appel, G. *Technical Analysis: Power Tools for Active Investors : [new Techniques for Active Trading in the Stock Market!]*. Financial Times Prentice Hall books. Financial Times/Prentice Hall, 2005. ISBN 9780131479029.
- [e12007understanding][4] Appel, G. and E. Dobson. *Understanding Moving Average Convergence-divergence*. Traders Press, 2007. ISBN 9780934380928.
- [Atsalakis20095932][5] Atsalakis, G. S. and K. P. Valavanis. Surveying stock market forecasting techniques – part ii: Soft computing methods. *Expert Systems with Applications*, 36(3):5932 – 5941, 2009.
- [beau1999day][6] Beau, C.L. and D.W. Lucas. *Day Trading Systems and Methods*. Marketplace Books, 1999. ISBN 9781883272272.
- [galow2011profitable][7] Bigalow, S.W. *Profitable Candlestick Trading: Pinpointing Market Opportunities to Maximize Profits*. Wiley Trading. Wiley, 2011. ISBN 9781118005804.
- [box1970time][8] Box, G.E.P. and G.M. Jenkins. *Time series analysis: forecasting and control*. Holden-Day, 1970.
- [Brock][9] Brock, W., J. Lakonishok, and B. LeBaron. Two simple technical trading rules and the stochastic properties of stock returns. *Journal of Finance*, 47(5):1731–64, 1992.
- [own1959statistical][10] Brown, R.G. *Statistical forecasting for inventory control*. McGraw-Hill, 1959.
- [own1963statistical][11] Brown, R.G. *Smoothing, forecasting and prediction of discrete time series*. Prentice-Hall, 1963.
- [i2011encyclopedia][12] Bulkowski, T.N. *Encyclopedia of Chart Patterns*. Wiley Trading. Wiley, 2011. ISBN 9781118045855.

- [13] Chande, T.S. and S. Kroll. *The new technical trader: boost your profit by plugging into the latest indicators*. Wiley Finance. Wiley, 1994. ISBN 9780471597803.
- [14] Chopra, N., J. Lakonishok, and J. Ritter. Measuring abnormal performance do stocks overreact? *Journal of Financial Economics*, 31:235 – 268, 1992.
- [15] Covell, M.W. *Trend Following (Updated Edition): Learn to Make Millions in Up or Down Markets*. Pearson Education, 2009. ISBN 9780135094402.
- [16] De Bondt, W. and R. Thaler. Does the stock market overreact? *Journal of Finance*, 40(0):793 – 805, 1985.
- [17] De Gooijer, J. G. and R. J. Hyndman. 25 years of time series forecasting. *International Journal of Forecasting*, 22(3):443 – 473, 2006.
- [18] Devcic, J. Weighted moving averages: The basics, 2010. URL <http://www.investopedia.com/articles/technical/060401.asp>. [Online; accessed 1-March-2014].
- [19] Dueker, M. and C.J. Neely. Can markov switching rules predict foreign exchange returns? *Journal of Banking and Finance*, 31:297 – 296, 2007.
- [20] Efron, B. Bootstrap methods: Another look at the jackknife. *The Annals of Statistics*, 71:1–26, 1979.
- [21] Faith, C. *Way of the Turtle: The Secret Methods that Turned Ordinary People into Legendary Traders*. McGraw Hill professional. McGraw-Hill Education, 2007. ISBN 9780071509466.
- [22] Fatima, S. and G Hussain. Statistical models of kse100 index using hybrid financial systems. *Neurocomputing*, 71(13–15):2742 – 2746, 2008.
- [23] Fiess, N. M. and R. MacDonald. Towards the fundamentals of technical analysis: analysing the information content of high, low and close prices. *Economic Modelling*, 19(3):353 – 374, 2002.
- [24] Friesen, G. C., P. A. Weller, and L. M. Dunham. Price trends and patterns in technical analysis - a theoretical and empirical examination. *Journal of Banking and Finance*, 33(6):1089 – 1100, 2009.
- [25] Gutierrez Jr, R. and E. Kelley. The long-lasting momentum in weekly returns. *Journal of Finance*, 63:415 – 447, 2008.
- [26] Han, J., M. Kamber, and J. Pei. *Data Mining: Concepts and Techniques: Concepts and Techniques*. Elsevier Science, 2011. ISBN 9780123814807.

- [Holt20045] [27] Holt, C. C. Forecasting seasonals and trends by exponentially weighted moving averages. *International Journal of Forecasting*, 20(1):5 – 10, 2004.
- [Hsu201114026] [28] Hsu, C.M. A hybrid procedure for stock price prediction by integrating self-organizing map and genetic programming. *Expert Systems with Applications*, 38(11):14026 – 14036, 2011.
- [Huang20052513] [29] Huang, W., Y. Nakamori, and S-Y. Wang. Forecasting stock market movement direction with support vector machine. *Computers and Operations Research*, 32(10):2513 – 2522, 2005.
- [Hendry2008] [30] Hyndman, R. J and K. Yeasmin. Automatic time series forecasting: The forecast package for r. *Journal of Statistical Software*, 2008.
- [Jegadeesh1990] [31] Jegadeesh, N. Evidence of predictable behavior of security returns. *Journal of Finance*, 45:881 – 898, 1990.
- [Jegadeesh1993] [32] Jegadeesh, N. and S. Titman. Returns to buying winners and selling losers: Implications for stock market efficiency. *Journal of Finance*, 48:65 – 91, 1993.
- [Jegadeesh1995] [33] Jegadeesh, N. and S. Titman. Overreaction, delayed reaction and contrarian profits. *Review of Financial Studies*, 8:973 – 993, 1995.
- [Kaufman2013trading] [34] Kaufman, P.J. *Trading Systems and Methods*. Wiley, 2013. ISBN 9781118222249.
- [Khashei20124344] [35] Khashei, M and M. Bijari. A new class of hybrid models for time series forecasting. *Expert Systems with Applications*, 39(4):4344 – 4357, 2012.
- [Khashei2009956] [36] Khashei, M., M. Bijari, and G. A. R. Ardali. Improvement of auto-regressive integrated moving average models using fuzzy logic and artificial neural networks (anns). *Neurocomputing*, 72(4–6):956 – 967, 2009.
- [Kriechbaumer201432] [37] Kriechbaumer, T., A. Angus, D. Parsons, and M. R. Casado. An improved wavelet–arima approach for forecasting metal prices. *Resources Policy*, 39(0):32 – 41, 2014.
- [Lane1986using] [38] Lane, G.C. *Using Stochastics, Cycles and R.S.I.* 1986.
- [Lehmann1990] [39] Lehmann, B. Fads, martingales and market efficiency. *Quarterly Journal of Economics*, 105:1 – 28, 1990.
- [Leisch2002] [40] Leisch, Friedrich. Sweave: Dynamic generation of statistical reports using literate data analysis. In Härdle, Wolfgang and Bernd Rönz, editors, *Compstat 2002 — Proceedings in Computational Statistics*, pages 575–580. Physica Verlag, Heidelberg, 2002. URL <http://www.stat.uni-muenchen.de/~leisch/Sweave>. ISBN 3-7908-1517-9.



- [levich1993] [41] Levich, R. and L. Thomas. The significance of technical trading rule profits in the foreign exchange market: A bootstrap approach. *Journal of International Money and Finance*, 12:451 – 474, 1993.
- [malkiel1999random] [42] Malkiel, B.G. *A Random Walk Down Wall Street: Including a Life-cycle Guide to Personal Investing*. Norton, 1999. ISBN 9780393047813.
- [Marshall2005] [43] Marshall, B. R. and R. H. Cahan. Is technical analysis profitable on a stock market which has characteristics that suggest it may be inefficient? *Research in International Business and Finance*, 19(3):384 – 398, 2005.
- [Marshall20062303] [44] Marshall, B. R, M. R. Young, and L. C. Rose. Candlestick technical trading strategies: Can they create value for investors? *Journal of Banking and Finance*, 30(8):2303 – 2323, 2006.
- [Marshall2008199] [45] Marshall, B. R., R. H. Cahan, and J. M. Cahan. Does intraday technical analysis in the u.s. equity market have value? *Journal of Empirical Finance*, 15(2):199 – 210, 2008.
- [Menkhoff20102573] [46] Menkhoff, L. The use of technical analysis by fund managers: International evidence. *Journal of Banking and Finance*, 34(11):2573 – 2586, 2010.
- [mills2011] [47] Mills, T. C. *The Foundations of Modern Time Series Analysis*. Palgrave Macmillan, 2011. ISBN 9780230290181.
- [is2006candlestick] [48] Morris, G.L. *Candlestick Charting Explained: Timeless Techniques for Trading stocks and Sutures*. McGraw-Hill Education, 2006. ISBN 9780071632171.
- [murphy1999technical] [49] Murphy, J.J. *Technical Analysis of the Financial Markets: A Comprehensive Guide to Trading Methods and Applications*. Penguin Group US, 1999. ISBN 9781101659199.
- [neely1997] [50] Neely, C. J., P. Weller, and R. Dittmar. Is technical analysis in the foreign exchange market profitable? a genetic programming approach. *Journal of Financial and Quantitative Analysis*, 32:405 – 426, 1997.
- [nison2001japanese] [51] Nison, S. *Japanese Candlestick Charting Techniques: A Contemporary Guide to the Ancient Investment Techniques of the Far East*. New York Institute of Finance, 2001. ISBN 9780735201811.
- [Ord20041] [52] Ord, K. Charles holt’s report on exponentially weighted moving averages: an introduction and appreciation. *International Journal of Forecasting*, 20(1):1 – 3, 2004.
- [Pai2005497] [53] Pai, P-F. and C-S. Lin. A hybrid arima and support vector machines model in stock price forecasting. *Omega*, 33(6):497 – 505, 2005.
- [Qian20076180] [54] Qian, G. and X. Zhao. On time series model selection involving many candidate arma models. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 51(12):6180 – 6196, 2007.

- [Reitz2006121] [55] Reitz, S. On the predictive content of technical analysis. *The North American Journal of Economics and Finance*, 17(2):121 – 137, 2006.
- [Rojas2008519] [56] Rojas, I., O. Valenzuela, F. Rojas, A. Guillen, L.J. Herrera, H. Pomares, L. Marquez, and M. Pasadas. Soft-computing techniques and arma model for time series prediction. *Neurocomputing*, 71(4-6):519 – 537, 2008.
- [Rout20147] [57] Rout, M., B. Majhi, R. Majhi, and G. Panda. Forecasting of currency exchange rates using an adaptive arma model with differential evolution based training. *Journal of King Saud University - Computer and Information Sciences*, 26(1):7 – 18, 2014.
- [Schulmeister2009190] [58] Schulmeister, S. Profitability of technical stock trading: Has it moved from daily to intraday data? *Review of Financial Economics*, 18(4):190 – 201, 2009.
- [Schwager2012market] [59] Schwager, J.D. *Market Wizards: Interviews With Top Traders*. HarperCollins, 1988. ISBN 978-0887306105.
- [schwager2012new] [60] Schwager, J.D. *The New Market Wizards: Conversations with America's Top Traders*. HarperBusiness, 1994. ISBN 978-0887306679.
- [shumway2010time] [61] Shumway, R.H. and D.S. Stoffer. *Time Series Analysis and Its Applications: With R Examples*. Springer, 2010. ISBN 9781441978653.
- [Shynkevich2012193] [62] Shynkevich, A. Performance of technical analysis in growth and small cap segments of the us equity market. *Journal of Banking and Finance*, 36(1):193 – 208, 2012.
- [So2014212] [63] So, M. K. P. and R. S. W. Chung. Dynamic seasonality in time series. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 70(0):212 – 226, 2014.
- [sweeney182] [64] Sweeney, R. Beating the foreign exchange market. *Journal of Finance*, 41:163 – 182, 1986.
- [Tan20103606] [65] Tan, Z., J. Zhang, J. Wang, and J. Xu. Day-ahead electricity price forecasting using wavelet transform combined with arima and garch models. *Applied Energy*, 87(11):3606 – 3610, 2010.
- [TanakaYamawaki2007125] [66] Tanaka-Yamawaki, M. and S. Tokuoka. Adaptive use of technical indicators for the prediction of intra-day stock prices. *Physica A: Statistical Mechanics and its Applications*, 383(1):125 – 133, 2007.
- [Prodan2013214] [67] Ulku, N. and E. Prodan. Drivers of technical trend-following rules profitability in world stock markets. *International Review of Financial Analysis*, 30:214 – 229, 2013.
- [Wang2012758] [68] Wang, J-J., J-Z. Wang, Z-G. Zhang, and S-P. Guo. Stock index forecasting based on a hybrid model. *Omega*, 40(6):758 – 766, 2012.

- [man2005mechanical](#) [69] Weissman, R.L. *Mechanical Trading Systems: Pairing Trader Psychology with Technical Analysis*. Wiley, 2005. ISBN 9780471654353.
- [wilder1978new](#) [70] Wilder, J.W. *New concepts in technical trading systems*. Trend Research, 1978. ISBN 9780894590276.
- [ams1989definitive](#) [71] Williams, L. *The definitive guide to futures trading*. Number v. 2 in The Definitive Guide to Futures Trading. Windsor Books, 1989. ISBN 9780930233365.
- [williams2011long](#) [72] Williams, L. *Long-Term Secrets to Short-Term Trading*. Wiley Trading. Wiley, 2011. ISBN 9781118184684.
- [Winters1960](#) [73] Winters, P. R. Forecasting sales by exponentially weighted moving averages. *Management Science*, 6(3):324–342, 1960.
- [Zhang2003159](#) [74] Zhang, G. P. Time series forecasting using a hybrid arima and neural network model. *Neurocomputing*, 50(0):159 – 175, 2003.